Republic of the Philippines
Department of Transportation and Communications
CIVIL AVIATION AUTHORITY OF THE PHILIPPINES
Office of the Director General

MEMORANDUM CIRCULAR NO.: __14-15__

TO   :   **ALL CONCERNED**

FROM   :   **THE DIRECTOR GENERAL**

SUBJECT   :   **AMENDMENT TO PHILIPPINE CIVIL AVIATION REGULATIONS – AIR NAVIGATION SERVICES (CAR-ANS) PART 7 INCORPORATING ADDITIONAL ANNEX 10 SARPs and AMENDMENT 85 TO ICAO ANNEX 10 VOLUME III**

REFERENCE:

1. Philippine Civil Aviation Regulations- Air Navigation Services Part 7
2. ICAO Annex 10 Volume III
3. ICAO State Letter AN 7/1.1.45-10/28 Adoption of Amendment 85 to Annex 10
4. Regulations Amendment Procedures
5. Board Resolution No. 2012-054 dated 28 September 2012

Pursuant to the powers vested in me under the Republic Act 9497, otherwise known as the Civil Aviation Authority Act of 2008 and in accordance with the Board Resolution No.: 2012-054 dated 28 September 2012, I hereby approve the incorporation of ICAO Annex 10 Volume III Amendment No. 85 and other provisions of the Annex to the Philippine Civil Aviation Regulations – Air Navigation Services.

ORIGINAL REGULATION:

CAR-ANS PART 7

MANUAL OF STANDARDS FOR DIGITAL DATA COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS
. . .

INTRODUCTION
. . .

ICAO Annex 10 standards and recommended practices (SARPS) are contained in the MOS. Standards are applicable to all communication, navigation and surveillance facilities used in support of international air navigation.

This CAR-ANS is referenced in CAR-ANS Part 10, Civil Aviation Regulations governing CNS services. Users of this document should refer to the applicable provision of CAR-ANS, together with this manual, to ascertain the requirements of, and the obligations imposed by, the civil aviation legislation in regard to air navigation service.

The responsibility of matters within this Manual of Standards is with the Aerodrome and Air Navigation Services Safety Oversight Office, CAAP.

. . .

7.1 DEFINITIONS

Aeronautical telecommunication network (ATN). A global internetwork architecture that allows ground, air-ground and avionic data subnetworks to exchange digital data for the safety of air navigation and for the regular, efficient, and economic operation of air traffic services.

. . .

Bit error rate (BER). The number of bit errors in a sample divided by the total number of bits in the sample, generally averaged over many such samples.

. . .

Circuit mode. A configuration of the communications network which gives the appearance to the application of a dedicated transmission path.

. . .

Doppler shift. The frequency shift observed at a receiver due to any relative motion between transmitter and receiver.

. . .

VHF digital link (VDL). A constituent mobile subnetwork of the aeronautical telecommunication network (ATN), operating in the aeronautical mobile VHF frequency band. In addition, the VDL may provide non-ATN functions such as, for instance, digitized voice.

(NOTE: The current version of CAR-ANS 7 does not contain a chapter on GENERAL INFORMATION.)

7.3 AERONAUTICAL TELECOMMINICATION NETWORK
(Reserved/ To be developed)

7.4 AERONAUTICAL MOBILE-SATELLITE (ROUTE) SERVICE (AMS(R)S)
(Reserved/ To be developed)

7.5 SSR MODE S AIR-GROUND DATALINK
(Reserved/ To be developed)

7.6 VHF AIR-GROUND DIGITAL LINK (VDL)
(Reserved/ To be developed)

(NOTE: The current version of CAR-ANS 7 does not contain a chapter on SUBNETWORK INTERCONNECTION.

7.8 AFTN NETWORK

7.8.1 DEFINITIONS
Data signalling rate. Data signalling rate refers to the passage of information per unit of time, and is expressed in bits/second. Data signalling rate is given by the formula:

$$\sum_{i=1}^{i=m} \frac{1}{T_i} \log_2 n_i$$

where m is the number of parallel channels, T_i is the minimum interval for the ith channel expressed in seconds, n_i is the number of significant conditions of the modulation in the ith channel.

. . .

Degree of standardized test distortion. The degree of distortion of the restitution measured during a specific period of time when the modulation is perfect and corresponds to a specific text.

. . .

Modulation rate. The reciprocal of the unit interval measured in seconds. This rate is expressed in bauds.

. . .

7.8.2 TECHNICAL PROVISIONS RELATING TO TELETYPEWRITER APPARATUS AND CIRCUITS USED IN THE AFTN

. . .

7.8.3.1 Selection of Type of modulation and code

Frequency shift modulation (F1B) should be employed in radioteletypewriter systems used in the aeronautical fixed service (AFS), except where the characteristics of the independent sideband (ISB) method of operation are of advantage.

. . .

7.8.3.2.3 The overall distortion of the teletypewriter signal, as monitored at the output of the radio transmitter or in its immediate vicinity, should not exceed 10 per cent.

. . .

7.8.5 TECHNICAL PROVISIONS RELATING TO ATS MESSAGE TRANSMISSION

7.8.5.1 Interconnection by direct or omnibus channels — low modulation rates — 5-unit code.

7.8.5.1.1 AFTN techniques (c.f. 7.8.2) should be used.

7.8.6 TECHNICAL PROVISIONS RELATING TO INTERNATIONAL GROUND-GROUND DATA INTERCHANGE AT MEDIUM AND HIGHER SIGNALLING RATES

7.8.6.1 General

. . .

7.8.6.1.2 When the provisions of 8.6.1.1 are applied, International Alphabet No. 5 (IA-5) contained in Table 8-2 shall be used.

. . .

7.8.6.1.2.3 When the provisions of 8.6.1.2.2 are applied, the sense of the character parity bit shall produce even parity in links which operate on the start-stop principle, and odd parity in links using end-to-end synchronous operations.

7.8.6.1.2.4 Character-for-character conversion shall be as listed in Tables 8-3 and 8-4 for all characters which are authorized in the AFTN format for transmission on the AFS in both IA-5 and ITA-2.

. . .

7.8.6.2 Data transmission characteristics

. . .

7.8.6.2.3 The type of modulation for each data signalling rate should be chosen as follows:

Data signalling rate	Type of modulation
600 bits/s	Frequency
1 200 bits/s	Frequency
2 400 bits/s	Phase

4 800 bits/s	Phase
9 600 bits/s	Phase-amplitude

7.8.6.2.4 CHARACTER STRUCTURE ON DATA LINKS

7.8.6.2.4.1   Character parity shall not be used for error checking on CIDIN links. Parity appended to IA-5 coded characters per 8.6.1.2.2, prior to entry to the CIDIN shall be ignored. For messages exiting the CIDIN, parity shall be generated in accordance with 8.6.1.2.3.

. . .

7.8.6.2.5   When exchanging data over CIDIN links using bit-oriented procedures, the entry centre address, exit centre addresses and destination addresses in the Transport and CIDIN Packet Headers shall be in the IA-5 character set contained in Table 8-2.

7.8.6.2.6   When transmitting messages in AFTN format over CIDIN links using bit-oriented procedures, the messages should be in the IA-5 character set contained in Table 8-2.

7.8.6.3   Ground-ground character-oriented data link control procedures

7.8.6.3.1   Descriptions. The following descriptions shall apply to data link applications contained in this section:

. . .

7.8.6.3.2 MESSAGE COMPOSITION

. . .

b) An information message used for the exchange of data shall take one of the following forms: (See Annex 10 Volume III Part I 7.8.6.3.2 for data)

. . .

7.8.6.3.3.1   In addition to the characteristics prescribed in the paragraphs that follow for both system categories A and B, other parameters that shall be accounted for in order to ensure viable, operationally reliable communications include:

   a) the number of SYN characters required to establish and maintain synchronization;

   b) the values of system time-outs for such functions as "idle line" and "no response" as well as the number of automatic retries that are to be attempted before manual intervention is signalled;

   c) the composition of prefixes within a 15 character maximum.

7.8.6.3.3.2   For multipoint implementations designed to permit only centralized (computer-to-terminal) operations, the provisions of 8.6.3.7 should be employed.

7.8.6.3.4 BLOCK CHECK CHARACTER

. . .

7.8.6.3.4.5   The sense of the parity bit of the block check character shall be the same as for the information characters (see 8.6.1.2.3).

. . .

7.8.6.3.6 DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM CATEGORY B

. . .

7.8.6.3.6.1 *LINK ESTABLISHMENT PROCEDURE*

. . .

7.8.6.3.6.1.2   The called station, upon detecting ENQ, shall send one of two replies:

a) if ready to receive, it shall send a sequence consisting of a DLE followed by a colon, a prefix which includes its identity and ended by ACK0 (see 8.6.3.6.2.5). This establishes the link for message transfers from the calling to the called station;

. . .

7.8.6.3.6.2 *MESSAGE TRANSFER PROCEDURE*

. . .

7.8.6.3.6.2.2   It is permissible for a transmission block to be a complete message or a portion of a message. The sending station shall initiate the transmission with SOTB N followed by:

a) SOH if it is the beginning of a message that contains a heading;

. . .

d) STX if it is an intermediate block that continues a text.

7.8.6.3.6.2.3   A block which ends at an intermediate point within a message shall be ended with ETB; a block which ends at the end of a message shall be ended with ETX.

7.8.6.3.6.2.4   It shall be permissible for each station to initiate and continue to send messages to the other concurrently according to the following sequence.

a) It shall be permissible for the sending station (master side) to send blocks, containing messages or parts of messages, continuously to the receiving station (slave side) without waiting for a reply.

b) It shall be permissible for replies, in the form of slave responses, to be transmitted by the receiving station while the sending station is sending subsequent blocks.

c) If a negative reply is received, the sending station (master side) shall start retransmission with the block following the last block for which the proper affirmative acknowledgement was received

. . .

7.8.6.3.7.1 *LINK ESTABLISHMENT PROCEDURE*

7.8.6.3.7.1.1   To establish the link for transmission the control station shall either:

a) poll one of the tributary stations to assign it master status; or.

b) assume master status and select a tributary station to assume slave status and receive a transmission according to either of two prescribed selection procedures:

1. selection with response (see 8.6.3.7.1.5); or
2. fast select (see 8.6.3.7.1.7)

. . .

7.8.6.3.7.1.6   A tributary station detecting its assigned selection supervisory sequence shall assume slave status and send one of two replies:

. . .

b) if the station is not ready to receive, it shall send an optional prefix followed by NAK. Upon detecting NAK, it shall be permissible for the master station to again attempt selecting the same tributary station or initiate termination by sending EOT.

7.8.6.3.7.1.7   Fast select is accomplished by the control station assuming master status and sending a selection supervisory sequence, and without ending this transmission with ENQ or waiting for the selected tributary to respond, proceeding directly to message transfer.

. . .

7.8.6.4 Ground-ground bit-oriented data link control procedures

7.8.6.4.1   The following descriptions shall apply to data link applications contained in this section:

. . .

7.8.6.4.2   BIT-ORIENTED DATA LINK CONTROL PROCEDURES FOR POINT-TO-POINT, GROUND-GROUND DATA INTERCHANGE APPLICATIONS EMPLOYING SYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION FACILITIES

7.8.6.4.2.1   *Frame format*. Frames shall contain not less than 32 bits, excluding the opening and closing flags, and shall conform to the following format:

(See CAR-ANS 7. 8.6.4.2.1 for data)

7.8.6.4.2.1.1   A frame shall consist of an opening flag (F), an address field (A), a control field (C), an optional information field (I), a frame check sequence (FCS), and a closing flag sequence (F), and shall be transmitted in that order.

. . .

7.8.6.4.2.2.4   The generation and checking of the FCS accumulation shall be as follows:

   a)   the transmitting station shall initiate the FCS accumulation with the first (least significant) bit of the address (A) field and shall include all bits up to and including the last bit preceding the FCS sequence, but shall exclude all 0 bits (if any) inserted to achieve transparent transmission;

   b)   upon completion of the accumulation the FCS shall be transmitted, starting with bit b1 (highest order coefficient) and proceeding in sequence to bit b16 (lowest order coefficient) as shown below;

(See CAR-ANS 7. 8.6.4.2.2.4 for data)

. . .

7.8.6.4.2.5   *MODES*

. . .

7.8.6.4.2.6.4   The station parameters associated with the three control field types shall be as follows:

. . .

   j)   The maximum number (*k*) of sequentially numbered I-frames that a station may have outstanding (i.e. unacknowledged) at any given time is a station parameter which shall never exceed the modulus.

7.8.6.4.2.7   *Commands and responses*. It shall be permissible for a combined station to generate either commands or responses. A command shall contain the remote station address while a response shall contain the sending station address. The mnemonics associated with all of the commands and responses prescribed for each of the three frame types (I, S, and U) and the corresponding encoding of the control field are as shown in Table 8-6.

. . .

7.8.6.4.2.7.2.1 The receive ready command or response (RR) shall be used by a station to:

. . .

   c)   clear a busy condition that was initiated by the transmission of RNR.

7.8.6.4.2.7.2.2   It shall be permissible to issue a reject command or response (REJ) to request retransmission of frames starting with the I-frame numbered *N*(R) where:

. . .

7.8.6.4.2.7.3   The U-frame commands and responses shall be used to extend the number of link control functions. Transmitted U-frames do not increment the sequence counts at either the transmitting or receiving station.

. . .

   c)   The frame reject response (FRMR), employing the information field described below, shall be used by a combined station in the operational mode (ABM) to report that one of the following conditions resulted from the receipt of a frame without an FCS error:

      . . .

      3)   a frame having an invalid $N(R)$ count.

   d)   The disconnected mode response (DM) shall be used to report a non-operational status here the station is logically disconnected from the link. No information field shall be permitted with the DM response.

7.8.6.4.3   EXCEPTION CONDITION REPORTING AND RECOVERY

. . .

7.8.6.4.3.1   *Busy c ondition*. A busy condition occurs when a station temporarily cannot receive or continue to receive I-frames due to internal constraints, e.g. due to buffering limitations. The busy condition shall be reported to the remote combined station by the transmission of an RNR frame with the $N(R)$ number of the next I-frame that is expected. It shall be permissible for traffic pending transmission at the busy station to be transmitted prior to or following the RNR.

. . .

7.8.6.4.3.2.1   The means specified in 8.6.4.3.2.1.1 and 8.6.4.3.2.1.2 shall be available for initiating the retransmission of lost or errored I-frames following the occurrence of a sequence error.

. . .

7.8.6.4.3.2.1.1   Where the REJ command/response is used to initiate an exception recovery following the detection of a sequence error, only one "sent REJ" exception condition, from one station to another station, shall be established at a time. A "sent REJ" exception shall be cleared when the requested I-frame is received. A station receiving REJ shall initiate sequential (re)transmission of I-frames starting with the I-frame indicated by the $N(R)$ contained in the REJ frame.

. . .

7.8.6.4.3.2.1.3   A combined station which has timed out waiting for a response should not retransmit all unacknowledged frames immediately. The station may enquire about status with a supervisory frame.

. . .

7.8.6.5   Common ICAO data interchange network (CIDIN)

7.8.6.5.1   INTRODUCTION

7.8.6.5.1.1   CIDIN entry and exit centres or stations shall be used to connect application entities to the CIDIN.

. . .

7.8.6.5.2   GENERAL

7.8.6.5.2.1 There shall be four protocol levels defined to control the transfer of messages between CIDIN switching centres:

— the data link protocol level
— the X.25 packet protocol level
— the CIDIN packet protocol level
— the CIDIN transport protocol level.

. . .

7.8.6.5.2.5 *THE TRANSPORT PROTOCOL LEVEL*

. . .

7.8.6.5.2.5.5 Recovery of messages shall be performed at the transport level.

(NOTE: the current version of CAR-ANS 7 does not contain a chapter on AIRCRAFT ADDRESSING SYSTEM.)

7.10 POINT-TO-MULTIPOINT COMMUNICATIONS
(Reserved/ To be developed)

7.11 HF DATA LINK
(Reserved/ To be developed)

7.12 UNIVERSAL ACCESS TRANSCEIVER (UAT)
(Reserved/ To be developed)

AMENDED REGULATION:

CAR-ANS PART 7

GOVERNING DIGITAL DATA COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS

. . .

INTRODUCTION

. . .

ICAO Annex 10 Standards and Recommended Practices (SARPS) are contained in CAR-ANS Part 7. Standards are applicable to all communication, navigation and surveillance facilities used in support of international air navigation.

This CAR-ANS is referenced in CAR-ANS Part 10, Civil Aviation Regulations Governing Regulatory Requirements and Standards for Operation and Maintenance of CNS Services. Users of this document should refer to the applicable provision of CAR-ANS, to ascertain the requirements of, and the obligations imposed by, the civil aviation legislation in regard to air navigation service.

The responsibility of matters within CAR-ANS Part 7, Governing Digital Data Communication Systems is with the Aerodrome and Air Navigation Services Safety Oversight Office, CAAP.

. . .

7.1 DEFINITIONS
  Aeronautical administrative communications (AAC). Communications necessary for the exchange of aeronautical administrative messages.

Aeronautical operational control (AOC). Communication required for the exercise of authority over the initiation, continuation, diversion, or termination of flight for safety, regularity and efficiency reasons.

Aeronautical telecommunication network (ATN). A global internetwork architecture that allows ground, air-ground and avionic data subnetworks to exchange digital data for the safety of air navigation and for the regular, efficient, and economic operation of air traffic services.

. . .

Air traffic service. A generic term meaning variously, flight information service, alerting service, air traffic advisory service, air traffic control service (area control service, approach control service or aerodrome control service).

Automatic dependent surveillance — contract (ADS-C). A means by which the terms of an ADS-C agreement will be exchanged between the ground system and the aircraft, via a data link, specifying under what conditions ADS-C reports would be initiated, and what data would be contained in the reports.

Automatic terminal information service (ATIS). The automatic provision of current, routine information to arriving and departing aircraft throughout 24 hours or a specified portion thereof.

Bit error rate (BER). The number of bit errors in a sample divided by the total number of bits in the sample, generally averaged over many such samples.

. . .

Circuit mode. A configuration of the communications network which gives the appearance to the application of a dedicated transmission path.

Controller pilot data link communications (CPDLC). A means of communication between controller and pilot, using data link for ATC communications.

Data link-automatic terminal information service (D-ATIS). The provision of ATIS via data link.

Data link flight information services (D-FIS). The provision of FIS via data link.

Doppler shift. The frequency shift observed at a receiver due to any relative motion between transmitter and receiver.

. . .

VHF digital link (VDL). A constituent mobile subnetwork of the aeronautical telecommunication network (ATN), operating in the aeronautical mobile VHF frequency band. In addition, the VDL may provide non-ATN functions such as, for instance, digitized voice.

Voice-automatic terminal information service (Voice-ATIS). The provision of ATIS by means of continuous and repetitive voice broadcasts.

7.2 GENERAL
(to be developed)

7.3 AERONAUTICAL TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK

Note 1 — Detailed technical specifications for ATN/OSI applications are contained in the Manual on Detailed Technical Specifications for the Aeronautical Telecommunication Network (ATN) using ISO/OSI standards and protocols (Doc 9880) and in the Manual of Technical Provisions for the Aeronautical Telecommunication Network (ATN) (Doc 9705).

Note 2 — Detailed technical specifications for ATN/IPS applications are contained in the Manual for the Aeronautical Telecommunication Network (ATN) using Internet Protocol Suite (IPS) Standards and Protocols *(Doc 9896) (available electronically on the ICAO-Net).*

7.3.1 DEFINITIONS

Application entity (AE). An AE represents a set of ISO/OSI communication capabilities of a particular application process (see ISO/IEC 9545 for further details).

ATN security services. A set of information security provisions allowing the receiving end system or intermediate system to unambiguously identify (i.e. authenticate) the source of the received information and to verify the integrity of that information.

ATS interfacility data communication (AIDC). Automated data exchange between air traffic services units in support of flight notification, flight coordination, transfer of control and transfer of communication.

ATS message handling service (ATSMHS). An ATN application consisting of procedures used to exchange ATS messages in store-and-forward mode over the ATN such that the conveyance of an ATS message is in general not correlated with the conveyance of another ATS message by the service provider.

ATS message handling system (AMHS). The set of computing and communication resources implemented by ATS organizations to provide the ATS message handling service.

Authorized path. A communication path suitable for a given message category.

Data link initiation capability (DLIC). A data link application that provides the ability to exchange addresses, names and version numbers necessary to initiate data link applications (see Doc 4444).

Directory service (DIR). A service, based on the ITU-T X.500 series of recommendations, providing access to and management of structured information relevant to the operation of the ATN and its users.

Required communication performance (RCP). A statement of the performance requirements for operational communication in support of specific ATM functions (see Manual on Required Communication Performance (RCP) (Doc 9869)).

7.3.2   INTRODUCTION

7.3.2.1 The ATN is specifically and exclusively intended to provide digital data communications services to air traffic service provider organizations and aircraft operating agencies in support of:

   a) air traffic services communications (ATSC) with aircraft;

   b) air traffic services communications between ATS units;

   c) aeronautical operational control communications (AOC); and

   d) aeronautical administrative communications (AAC).

7.3.3   GENERAL

Note — The Standards and Recommended Practices in sections 7.3.4 to 7.3.8 define the minimum required protocols and services that will enable the global implementation of the aeronautical telecommunication network (ATN).

7.3.3.1 ATN communication services shall support ATN applications.

7.3.3.2 Requirements for implementation of the ATN shall be made on the basis of regional air navigation agreements. These agreements shall specify the area in which the communication standards for the ATN/OSI or the ATN/IPS are applicable.

7.3.4   GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

7.3.4.1 The ATN shall either use International Organization for Standardization (ISO) communication standards for open systems interconnection (OSI) or use the Internet Society (ISOC) communications standards for the Internet Protocol Suite (IPS).

Note 1. - Interoperability between interconnecting OSI/IPS networks is expected to be arranged prior to implementation.

Note 2. - Guidance material on interoperability between ATN/OSI and ATN/IPS is contained in Doc 9896.

7.3.4.2 The AFTN/AMHS gateway shall ensure the interoperability of AFTN and CIDIN stations and networks with the ATN.

7.3.4.3 An authorized path(s) shall be defined on the basis of a predefined routing policy.

7.3.4.4 The ATN shall transmit, relay, and deliver messages in accordance with the priority classifications and without discrimination or undue delay.

7.3.4.5 The ATN shall provide means to define data communications that can be carried only over authorized paths for the traffic type and category specified by the user.

7.3.4.6 The ATN shall provide communication in accordance with the prescribed required communication performance (RCP).

Note - The Manual on Required Communication Performance (RCP) (Doc 9869) contains the necessary information on RCP.

7.3.4.7   The ATN shall operate in accordance with the communication priorities as defined in Table 7.3-1, *Mapping of ATN communication priority*, and Table 7.3-2, *Mapping of ATN network priority to mobile subnetwork priority*.

7.3.4.8   The ATN shall enable exchange of application information when one or more authorized paths exist.

7.3.4.9   The ATN shall notify the appropriate application processes when no authorized path exists.

7.3.4.10   The ATN shall make provisions for the efficient use of limited bandwidth subnetworks.

7.3.4.11 The ATN shall enable an aircraft intermediate system (router) to connect to a ground intermediate system (router) via different subnetworks.

7.3.4.12   The ATN shall enable an aircraft intermediate system (router) to connect to different ground intermediate systems (routers).

7.3.4.13   The ATN shall enable the exchange of address information between applications.

7.3.4.14   Where the absolute time of day is used within the ATN, it shall be accurate to within 1 second of coordinated universal time (UTC).

Note - The time accuracy value results in synchronization errors of up to two seconds.

7.3.5   ATN APPLICATIONS REQUIREMENTS

7.3.5.1   System applications

Note - System applications provide services that are necessary for operation of the ATN.

7.3.5.1.1 The ATN shall support the data link initiation capability (DLIC) applications when air-ground data links are implemented.

Note - The Manual of Air Traffic Services Data Link Applications (Doc 9694, Part I) defines the data link initiation capability (DLIC) application.

7.3.5.1.2   The ATN/OSI end-system shall support the following directory services (DIR) application functions when AMHS and/or security protocols are implemented:

   a) directory information retrieval; and

   b) directory information modification.

7.3.5.2   Air-ground applications

7.3.5.2.1   The ATN shall be capable of supporting one or more of the following applications:

   a) ADS-C;

   b) CPDLC; and

   c) FIS (including ATIS and METAR).

Note - See the Manual of Air Traffic Services Data Link Applications (Doc 9694).

7.3.5.3   Ground-ground applications

7.3.5.3.1 The ATN shall be capable of supporting the following applications:

   a) ATS interfacility data communication

      (AIDC); and

   b) ATS message handling services   applications (ATSMHS).

Note — See the Manual of Air Traffic Services Data Link Applications (Doc 9694).

7.3.6   ATN COMMUNICATIONS SERVICE REQUIREMENTS

7.3.6.1   ATN/IPS upper layer communications service

7.3.6.1.1   An ATN host* shall be capable of supporting the ATN/IPS upper layers including an application layer.

7.3.6.2 ATN/OSI upper layer communications service

7.3.6.2.1   An ATN/OSI end-system (ES) * shall be capable of supporting the OSI upper layer communications service (ULCS) including session, presentation, and application layers.

7.3.6.3   ATN/IPS communications service

7.3.6.3.1   An ATN host shall be capable of supporting the ATN/IPS including the:

   a) transport layer in accordance with RFC 793 (TCP) and RFC 768 (UDP); and

   b) network layer in accordance with RFC 2460 (IPv6).

7.3.6.3.2   An IPS router shall support the ATN network layer in accordance with RFC 2460 (IPv6) and RFC 4271 (BGP), and RFC 2858 (BGP multiprotocol extensions).

7.3.6.4   ATN/OSI communications service

7.3.6.4.1   An ATN/OSI end-system shall be capable of supporting the ATN including the:

a) transport layer in accordance with ISO/IEC 8073 (TP4) and optionally ISO/IEC 8602 (CLTP); and

b) network layer in accordance with ISO/IEC 8473 (CLNP).

7.3.6.4.2   An ATN intermediate system (IS) shall support the ATN network layer in accordance with ISO/IEC 8473 (CLNP) and ISO/IEC 10747 (IDRP).

 * An ATN host is an ATN end-system in OSI terminology; an ATN end-system is an ATN host in IPS terminology.

7.3.7   ATN NAMING AND ADDRESSING REQUIREMENTS

Note. - The ATN nam ing and addr essing s cheme s upports t he pr inciples of una mbiguous identification of intermediate systems (routers) and end-systems (hosts) and pr ovides gl obal address standardization.

7.3.7.1   The ATN shall provide provisions for unambiguous application identification.

7.3.7.2   The ATN shall provide provisions for unambiguous addressing.

7.3.7.3 The ATN shall provide means to unambiguously address all ATN end-systems (hosts) and intermediate systems (routers).

7.3.7.4 The ATN addressing and naming plans shall allow States and organizations to assign addresses and names within their own administrative domains.

7.3.8   ATN SECURITY REQUIREMENTS

7.3.8.1   The ATN shall make provisions whereby only the controlling ATS unit may provide ATC instructions to aircraft operating in its airspace.

Note - This is achieved through the current and next data authority aspects of the controller-pilot data link communications (CPDLC) application.

7.3.8.2   The ATN shall enable the recipient of a message to identify the originator of that message.

7.3.8.3   ATN end-systems supporting ATN security services shall be capable of authenticating the identity of peer end- systems, authenticating the source of messages and ensuring the data integrity of the messages.

Note - The use of security is the default; however, its implementation is based on local policy.

7.3.8.4   The ATN services shall be protected against service attacks to a level consistent with the application service requirements.

Tables and Figures for Chapter 7.3

Table 7.3-1 Mapping of ATN communication priorities

Message categories	ATN application	Corresponding protocol priority	
		Transport layer priority	Network layer priority
Network/systems management		0	14
Distress communications		1	13
Urgent communications		2	12

High-priority flight safety messages	CPDLC, ADS-C	3	11
Normal-priority flight safety messages	AIDC, ATIS	4	10
Meteorological communications	METAR	5	9
Flight regularity communications	DLIC, ATSMHS	6	8
Aeronautical information service messages		7	7
Network/systems administration	DIR	8	6
Aeronautical administrative messages		9	5
<unassigned>		10	4
Urgent-priority administrative and U.N. Charter communications		11	3
High-priority administrative and State/Government communications		12	2
Normal-priority administrative communications		13	1
Low-priority administrative communications and aeronautical passenger communications		14	0
Note.— The network layer priorities shown in the table apply only to connectionless network priority and do not apply to subnetwork priority.			

Table 7.3-2 Mapping of ATN network priority to mobile subnetwork priority

Message categories	*ATN network layer priority*	*Corresponding mobile subnetwork priority (see Note 4)*					
		AMSS	*VDL Mode 2*	*VDL Mode 3*	*VDL Mode 4*	*SSR Mode S*	*HFDL*
Network/systems management	14	14	see Note 1	3	14	high	14
Distress communications	13	14	see Note 1	2	13	high	14
Urgent communications	12	14	see Note 1	2	12	high	14
High-priority flight safety messages	11	11	see Note 1	2	11	high	11
Normal-priority flight safety messages	10	11	see Note 1	2	10	high	11
Meteorological communications	9	8	see Note 1	1	9	low	8
Flight regularity communications	8	7	see Note 1	1	8	low	7
Aeronautical information service messages	7	6	see Note 1	0	7	low	6
Network/systems administration	6	5	see Note 1	0	6	low	5
Aeronautical administrative messages	5	5	not allowed	not allowed	not allowed	not allowed	not allowed
<unassigned>	4	unassigned	unassigned	unassigned	unassigned	unassigned	unassigned
Urgent-priority administrative and U.N. Charter communications	3	3	not allowed	not allowed	not allowed	not allowed	not allowed
High-priority administrative and State/Government communications	2	2	not allowed	not allowed	not allowed	not allowed	not allowed

Normal-priority administrative communications	1	1	not allowed	not allowed	not allowed	not allowed	not allowed
Low-priority administrative communications and aeronautical passenger communications	0	0	not allowed	not allowed	not allowed	not allowed	not allowed

Note 1.— VDL Mode 2 has no specific subnetwork priority mechanisms.

Note 2.— The AMSS SARPs specify mapping of message categories to subnetwork priority without explicitly referencing ATN network layer priority.

Note 3.— The term "not allowed" means that only communications related to safety and regularity of flight are authorized to pass over this subnetwork as defined in the subnetwork SARPs.

Note 4.— Only those mobile subnetworks are listed for which subnetwork SARPs exist and for which explicit support is provided by the ATN boundary intermediate system (BIS) technical provisions.

Figure 7.3-1 Conceptual model of the ATN

Note 1.— Shading indicates elements outside the scope of these SARPs. User requirements define the interface between the application entity and the user and ensure the functionality and interoperability of the ATN.

Note 2.— The figure represents a simplified model of the ATN and does not depict all of its capabilities (e.g. the store and forward capability which is provided for ATS message handling service).

Note 3.— Various end-to-end points have been defined within the ATN to specify certain end-to-end performance requirements. It may be necessary, however, to define different end-to-end points to facilitate the qualification of implementations to those performance requirements. In such cases, the end-to-end points should be clearly defined and correlated with the end-to-end points shown in the figure.

Note 4.— An IS is a conceptual representation of functionality and does not correspond precisely to a router. A router which implements the system management application requires the protocols of an end system and when using the system management application is also acting as an end system.

7.4   AERONAUTICAL MOBILE-SATELLITE (ROUTE) SERVICE (AMS(R)S)

*Note 1 - This chapter contains Standards and Recommended Practices applicable to the use of Aeronautical Mobile Satellite (R) Service communications technologies. The Standards and Recommended Practices in this chapter are service and performance-oriented an
d are not tied to a specific technology or technique.*

Note 2 - Detailed Technical Specifications of AMS(R)S Systems are contained in the manual on AMS(R)S. This document also provides a detailed description of the AMS(R)S, including details on the Standards and Recommended Practices below.

7.4.1 DEFINITIONS

Connection establishment delay. Connection establishment delay, as defined in ISO 8348, includes a component, attributable to the called subnetwork (SN) service user, which is the

time between the SN-CONNECT indication and the SN-CONNECT response. This user component is due to actions outside the boundaries of the satellite subnetwork and is therefore excluded from the AMS(R)S specifications.

Data transfer delay (95th percentile). The 95th percentile of the statistical distribution of delays for which transit delay is the average.

Data transit delay. In accordance with ISO 8348, the average value of the statistical distribution of data delays. This delay represents the subnetwork delay and does not include the connection establishment delay.

Network (N). The word "network" and its abbreviation "N" in ISO 8348 are replaced by the word "subnetwork" and its abbreviation "SN", respectively, wherever they appear in relation to the subnetwork layer packet data performance.

Residual error rate. The ratio of incorrect, lost, and duplicate subnetwork service data units (SNSDUs) to the total number of SNSDUs that were sent.

Spot beam. Satellite antenna directivity whose main lobe encompasses significantly less than the earth's surface that is within line-of-sight view of the satellite. May be designed so as to improve system resource efficiency with respect to geographical distribution of user earth stations.

Subnetwork (SN). See Network (N).

Subnetwork service data unit (SNSDU). An amount of subnetwork user data, the identity of which is preserved from one end of a subnetwork connection to the other.

Total voice transfer delay. The elapsed time commencing at the instant that speech is presented to the AES or GES and concluding at the instant that the speech enters the interconnecting network of the counterpart GES or AES. This delay includes vocoder processing time, physical layer delay, RF propagation delay and any other delays within an AMS(R)S subnetwork.

7.4.2   GENERAL

7.4.2.1 Any mobile-satellite system intended to provide AMS(R)S shall conform to the requirements of this chapter.

7.4.2.1.1   An AMS(R)S system shall support packet data service, or voice service, or both.

7.4.2.2 Requirements for mandatory carriage of AMS(R)S system equipment including the level of system capability shall be made on the basis of regional air navigation agreements which specify the airspace of operation and the implementation timescales for the carriage of equipment. A level of system capability shall include the performance of the AES, the satellite and the GES.

7.4.2.3 The agreements indicated in 7.4.2.2 shall provide at least two years' notice of mandatory carriage of airborne systems.

7.4.2.4 The Civil Aviation Authority of the Philippines (CAAP) shall coordinate with national authorities and service providers those implementation aspects of an AMS(R)S system that will permit its worldwide interoperability and optimum use, as appropriate.

7.4.3   RF CHARACTERISTICS

7.4.3.1   Frequency bands

Note - ITU Radio Regulations permit systems providing mobile-satellite service to use the same spectrum as AMS(R)S without requiring such systems to offer safety services. This situation

has t he p otential t o r educe t he s pectrum a vailable f or AM S(R)S. I t i s cr itical that S tates consider t his i ssue i n frequency pl anning and i n t he e stablishment of nat ional o r r egional spectrum requirements.

7.4.3.1.1 When providing AMS(R)S communications, an AMS(R)S system shall operate only in frequency bands which are appropriately allocated to AMS(R)S and protected by the ITU Radio Regulations.

7.4.3.2   Emissions

7.4.3.2.1   The total emissions of the AES necessary to meet designed system performance shall be controlled to avoid harmful interference to other systems necessary to support safety and regularity of air navigation, installed on the same or other aircraft.

Note 1 - Harmful interference can result from radiated and/or conducted emissions that include harmonics, di screte s purious, i ntermodulation pr oduct and noi se e missions, and ar e not necessarily limited to the "transmitter on" state.

Note 2 - Protection r equirements for G NSS a re co ntained in C AR-ANS Part 6 (Manual of Standards for Radio Navigation.

7.4.3.2.2   INTERFERENCE TO OTHER AMS(R)S EQUIPMENT

7.4.3.2.2.1   Emissions from an AMS(R)S system AES shall not cause harmful interference to an AES providing AMS(R)S on a different aircraft.

Note - One method of complying with 7.4.3.2.2.1 is by limiting emissions in the operating band of other AMS(R)S equipment to a level consistent with the intersystem interference requirements such as contained in RTCA document DO-215. RTCA and EUROCAE may establish new performance standards for future AMS(R)S which may describe methods of compliance with this requirement.

7.4.3.3 Susceptibility

7.4.3.3.1   The AES equipment shall operate properly in an interference environment causing a cumulative relative change in its receiver noise temperature (ΔT/T) of 25 per cent.

7.4.4 PRIORITY AND PRE-EMPTIVE ACCESS

7.4.4.1   Every aircraft earth station and ground earth station shall be designed to ensure that messages transmitted in accordance with CAR-ANS Part 2, 2.8.1.8, including their order of priority, are not delayed by the transmission and/or reception of other types of messages. If necessary, as a means to comply with the above requirement, message types not defined in CAR-ANS Part 2, 2.8.1.8 shall be terminated even without warning, to allow CAR-ANS Part 2, 2.8.1.8 type messages to be transmitted and received.

7.4.4.2 All AMS(R)S data packets and all AMS(R)S voice calls shall be identified as to their associated priority.

7.4.4.3   Within the same message category, the system shall provide voice communications priority over data communications.

7.4.5 SIGNAL ACQUISITION AND TRACKING

7.4.5.1   The AES, GES and satellites shall properly acquire and track service link signals when the aircraft is moving at a ground speed of up to 2,800 km/h (1,500 knots) along any heading.

7.4.5.2 The AES, GES and satellites shall properly acquire and track service link signals when the component of the aircraft acceleration vector in the plane of the satellite orbit is up to 1.2 g.

7.4.6 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

7.4.6.1 Designated operational coverage

7.4.6.1.1 An AMS(R)S system shall provide AMS(R)S throughout its designated operational coverage (DOC).

7.4.6.2 Failure notification

7.4.6.2.1 In the event of a service failure, an AMS(R)S system shall provide timely predictions of the time, location and duration of any resultant outages until full service is restored.

Note - Service outages may, for example, be caused by the failure of a satellite, satellite spot beam, or GES. The geographic areas affected by such outages may be a function of the satellite orbit and system design, and may vary with time.

7.4.6.2.2 The system shall annunciate a loss of communications capability within 30 seconds of the time when it detects such a loss.

7.4.6.3 AES requirements

7.4.6.3.1 The AES shall meet the relevant performance requirements contained in 7.4.6.4 and 7.4.6.5 for aircraft in straight and level flight throughout the designated operational coverage of the satellite system.

7.4.6.3.1.1 The AES shall meet the relevant performance requirements contained in 7.4.6.4 and 7.4.6.5 for aircraft attitudes of +20/-5 degrees of pitch and +/-25 degrees of roll throughout the DOC of the satellite system.

7.4.6.4 Packet data service performance

7.4.6.4.1 If the system provides AMS(R)S packet data service, it shall meet the standards of the following subparagraphs.

Note - System performance standards for packet data service may also be found in RTCA Document DO-270.

7.4.6.4.1.1 An AMS(R)S system providing a packet data service shall be capable of operating as a constituent mobile subnetwork of the ATN.

Note — In addition, an AMS(R)S may provide non-ATN data functions.

7.4.6.4.1.2 DELAY PARAMETERS

Note - The term "highest priority service" denotes the priority which is reserved for distress, urgency and certain infrequent network system management messages. The term "lowest priority service" denotes the priority used for regularity of flight messages. All delay parameters are under peak-hour traffic loading conditions.

7.4.6.4.1.2.1 Connection establishment delay. Connection establishment delay shall not be greater than 70 50 seconds.

7.4.6.4.1.2.2 In accordance with ISO 8348, data transit delay values shall be based on a fixed subnetwork service data unit (SNSDU) length of 128 octets. Data transit delays shall be defined as average values.

7.4.6.4.1.2.3 Data transit delay, from-aircraft, highest priority. From-aircraft data transit delay shall not be greater than 40 23 seconds for the highest priority data service.

7.4.6.4.1.2.3.1 Data transit delay, from-aircraft, lowest priority. From-aircraft data transit delay shall not be greater than 28 seconds for the lowest priority data service.

7.4.6.4.1.2.4 Data transit delay, to-aircraft, highest priority. To-aircraft data transit delay shall not be greater than 12 seconds for the highest priority data service.

7.4.6.4.1.2.4.1 Data transit delay, to-aircraft, lowest priority. To-aircraft data transit delay should not be greater than 28 seconds for the lowest priority data service.

7.4.6.4.1.2.5 Data transfer delay (95th percentile), from-aircraft, highest priority. From-aircraft data transfer delay (95th percentile), shall not be greater than 80 40 seconds for the highest priority data service.

7.4.6.4.1.2.5.1 Data transfer delay (95th percentile), from-aircraft, lowest priority. From-aircraft data transfer delay (95th percentile), shall not be greater than 60 seconds for the lowest priority data service.

7.4.6.4.1.2.6 Data transfer delay (95th percentile), to-aircraft, highest priority. To-aircraft data transfer delay (95th percentile), shall not be greater than 15 seconds for the highest priority data service.

7.4.6.4.1.2.6.1 Data transfer delay (95th percentile), to-aircraft, lowest priority. To-aircraft data transfer delay (95th percentile), shall not be greater than 30 seconds for the lowest priority data service.

7.4.6.4.1.2.7 Connection release delay (95th percentile). The connection release delay (95th percentile) shall not be greater than 30 25 seconds in either direction.

7.4.6.4.1.3 INTEGRITY

7.4.6.4.1.3.1 Residual error rate, from-aircraft. The residual error rate in the from-aircraft direction shall not be greater than 10^{-4} *10^{-6}* per SNSDU.

7.4.6.4.1.3.2 Residual error rate, to-aircraft. The residual error rate in the to-aircraft direction shall not be greater than 10^{-6} per SNSDU.

7.4.6.4.1.3.3 Connection resilience. The probability of a subnetwork connection (SNC) provider-invoked SNC release shall not be greater than 10^{-4} over any one-hour interval.

Note - Connection releases resulting from GES-to-GES handover, AES log-off or virtual circuit pre-emption are excluded from this specification.

7.4.6.4.1.3.4 The probability of an SNC provider-invoked reset shall not be greater than 10^{-1} over any one-hour interval.

7.4.6.5 **Voice service performance**

7.4.6.5.1 If the system provides AMS(R)S voice service, it shall meet the requirements of the following subparagraphs.

Note - ICAO is currently considering these provisions in the light of the introduction of new technologies.

7.4.6.5.1.1 CALL PROCESSING DELAY

7.4.6.5.1.1.1 AES origination. The 95th percentile of the time delay for a GES to present a call origination event to the terrestrial network interworking interface after a call origination event has arrived at the AES interface shall not be greater than 20 seconds.

7.4.6.5.1.1.2 GES origination. The 95th percentile of the time delay for an AES to present a call origination event at its aircraft interface after a call origination event has arrived at the terrestrial network interworking interface shall not be greater than 20 seconds.

7.4.6.5.1.2 VOICE QUALITY

7.4.6.5.1.2.1 The voice transmission shall provide overall intelligibility performance suitable for the intended operational and ambient noise environment.

7.4.6.5.1.2.2 The total allowable transfer delay within an AMS(R)S subnetwork shall not be greater than 0.485 seconds.

7.4.6.5.1.2.3 Due account should be taken of the effects of tandem vocoders and/or other analog/digital conversions.

7.4.6.5.1.3 VOICE CAPACITY

7.4.6.5.1.3.1 The system shall have sufficient available voice traffic channel resources such that an AES- or GES originated AMS(R)S voice call presented to the system shall experience a probability of blockage of no more than 10^{-2}.

Note - Available voice traffic channel resources include all pre-emptable resources, including those in use by non AMS(R)S communications.

7.4.6.6 Security

7.4.6.6.1 The system shall provide features for the protection of messages in transit from tampering.

7.4.6.6.2 The system shall provide features for protection against denial of service, degraded performance characteristics, or reduction of system capacity when subjected to external attacks.

Note - Possible methods of such attack include intentional flooding with spurious messages, intentional corruption of system software or databases, or physical destruction of the support infrastructure.

7.4.6.6.3 The system shall provide features for protection against unauthorized entry.

Note — These features are intended to provide protection against spoofing and "phantom controllers".

7.4.7 SYSTEM INTERFACES

7.4.7.1 An AMS(R)S system shall allow subnetwork users to address AMS(R)S communications to specific aircraft by means of the ICAO 24-bit aircraft address.

Note — Provisions on the allocation and assignment of ICAO 24-bit addresses are contained in the Appendix to Chapter 7.9.

7.4.7.2 Packet data service interfaces

7.4.7.2.1 If the system provides AMS(R)S packet data service, it shall provide an interface to the ATN.

Note — The detailed technical specifications related to provisions of the ATN-compliant subnetwork service are contained in Section 5.2.5 and Section 5.7.2 of Doc 9880 - Manual on Detailed Technical Specifications for the Aeronautical Telecommunication Network (ATN) (in preparation).

7.4.7.2.2 If the system provides AMS(R)S packet data service, it shall provide a connectivity notification (CN) function.

7.5 SSR MODE S AIR-GROUND DATALINK

Note — The SSR Mode S air-ground data link is also referred to as the Mode S subnetwork in the context of the aeronautical telecommunication network (ATN).

7.5.1 DEFINITIONS RELATING TO THE MODE S SUBNETWORK

Aircraft. The term aircraft may be used to refer to Mode S emitters (e.g. aircraft/vehicles), where appropriate.

Aircraft address. A unique combination of 24 bits available for assignment to an aircraft for the purpose of air-ground communications, navigation, and surveillance.

Aircraft data circuit-terminating equipment (ADCE). An aircraft specific data circuit-terminating equipment that is associated with an airborne data link processor (ADLP). It operates a protocol unique to Mode S data link for data transfer between air and ground.

Aircraft data link processor (ADLP). An aircraft-resident processor that is specific to a particular air-ground data link (e.g. Mode S) and which provides channel management, and segments and/or reassembles messages for transfer. It is connected to one side of aircraft elements common to all data link systems and on the other side to the air-ground link itself.

Aircraft/vehicle. May be used to describe either a machine or device capable of atmospheric flight, or a vehicle on the airport surface movement area (i.e. runways and taxiways).

Air-initiated protocol. A procedure initiated by a Mode S aircraft installation for delivering a standard length or extended length downlink message to the ground.

BDS Comm-B Data Selector. The 8-bit BDS code determines the register whose contents are to be transferred in the MB field of a Comm-B reply. It is expressed in two groups of 4 bits each, BDS1 (most significant 4 bits) and BDS2 (least significant 4 bits).

Broadcast. The protocol within the Mode S system that permits uplink messages to be sent to all aircraft in coverage area, and downlink messages to be made available to all interrogators that have the aircraft wishing to send the message under surveillance.

Capability report. Information identifying whether the transponder has a data link capability as reported in the capability (CA) field of an all-call reply or squitter transmission (see "data link capability report").

Close-out. A command from a Mode S interrogator that terminates a Mode S link layer communication transaction.

Cluster of interrogators. Two or more interrogators with the same interrogator identifier (II) code, operating cooperatively to ensure that there is no interference to the required surveillance and data link performance of each of the interrogators, in areas of common coverage.

Comm-A. A 112-bit interrogation containing the 56-bit MA message field. This field is used by the uplink standard length message (SLM) and broadcast protocols.

Comm-B. A 112-bit reply containing the 56-bit MB message field. This field is used by the downlink SLM, ground-initiated and broadcast protocols.

Comm-C. A 112-bit interrogation containing the 80-bit MC message field. This field is used by the uplink extended length message (ELM) protocol.

Comm-D. A 112-bit reply containing the 80-bit MD message field. This field is used by the downlink ELM protocol. Connection. A logical association between peer-level entities in a communication system.

Data link capability report. Information in a Comm-B reply identifying the complete Mode S communications capabilities of the aircraft installation.

Downlink. A term referring to the transmission of data from an aircraft to the ground. Mode S air-to-ground signals are transmitted on the 1 090 MHz reply frequency channel.

Extended length message (ELM). A series of Comm-C interrogations (uplink ELM) transmitted without the requirement for intervening replies, or a series of Comm-D replies (downlink ELM) transmitted without intervening interrogations.

> ***Uplink ELM (UELM).*** A term referring to extended length uplink communication by means of 112-bit Mode S Comm-C interrogations, each containing the 80-bit Comm-C message field (MC).

> ***Downlink ELM (DELM).*** A term referring to extended length downlink communication by means of 112-bit Mode S Comm-D replies, each containing the 80-bit Comm-D message field (MD).

Frame. The basic unit of transfer at the link level. In the context of Mode S subnetwork, a frame can include from one to four Comm-A or Comm-B segments, from two to sixteen Comm-C segments, or from one to sixteen Comm-D segments.

General formatter/manager (GFM). The aircraft function responsible for formatting messages to be inserted in the transponder registers. It is also responsible for detecting and handling error conditions such as the loss of input data.

Ground data circuit-terminating equipment (GDCE). A ground specific data circuit-terminating equipment associated with a ground data link processor (GDLP). It operates a protocol unique to Mode S data link for data transfer between air and ground.

Ground data link processor (GDLP). A ground-resident processor that is specific to a particular air-ground data link (e.g. Mode S), and which provides channel management, and segments and/or reassembles messages for transfer. It is connected on one side (by means of its DCE) to ground elements common to all data link systems, and on the other side to the air-ground link itself.

Ground-initiated Comm-B (GICB). The ground-initiated Comm-B protocol allows the interrogator to extract Comm-B replies containing data from a defined source in the MB field.

Ground-initiated protocol. A procedure initiated by a Mode S interrogator for delivering standard length or extended length messages to a Mode S aircraft installation.

Mode S air-initiated Comm-B (AICB) protocol. A procedure initiated by a Mode S transponder for transmitting a single Comm-B segment from the aircraft installation.

Mode S broadcast protocols. Procedures allowing standard length uplink or downlink messages to be received by more than one transponder or ground interrogator respectively.

Mode S ground-initiated Comm-B (GICB) protocol. A procedure initiated by a Mode S interrogator for eliciting a single Comm-B segment from a Mode S aircraft installation, incorporating the contents of one of 255 Comm-B registers within the Mode S transponder.

Mode S multisite-directed protocol. A procedure to ensure that extraction and close-out of a downlink standard length or extended length message is affected only by the particular Mode S interrogator selected by the aircraft.

Mode S packet. A packet conforming to the Mode S subnetwork standard, designed to minimize the bandwidth required from the air-ground link. ISO 8208 packets may be transformed into Mode S packets and vice-versa.

Mode S specific protocol (MSP). A protocol that provides restricted datagram service within the Mode S subnetwork.

Mode S specific services. A set of communication services provided by the Mode S system which are not available from other air-ground subnetworks, and therefore not interoperable.

Mode S specific services entity (SSE). An entity resident within an XDLP to provide access to the Mode S specific services.

Packet. The basic unit of data transfer among communication devices within the network layer (e.g. an ISO 8208 packet or a Mode S packet).

Segment. A portion of a message that can be accommodated within a single MA/MB field in the case of a standard length message, or MC/MD field in the case of an extended length message. This term is also applied to the Mode S transmissions containing these fields.

Standard length message (SLM). An exchange of digital data using selectively addressed Comm-A interrogations and/or Comm-B replies (see "Comm-A" and "Comm-B").

Subnetwork. An actual implementation of a data network that employs a homogeneous protocol and addressing plan, and is under the control of a single authority.

Subnetwork management entity (SNME). An entity resident within a GDLP that performs subnetwork management and communicates with peer entities in intermediate or end-systems.
Timeout. The cancellation of a transaction after one of the participating entities has failed to provide a required response within a pre-defined period of time.

Uplink. A term referring to the transmission of data from the ground to an aircraft. Mode S ground-to-air signals are transmitted on the 1 030 MHz interrogation frequency channel.

XDCE. A general term referring to both the ADCE and the GDCE.

XDLP. A general term referring to both the ADLP and the GDLP.

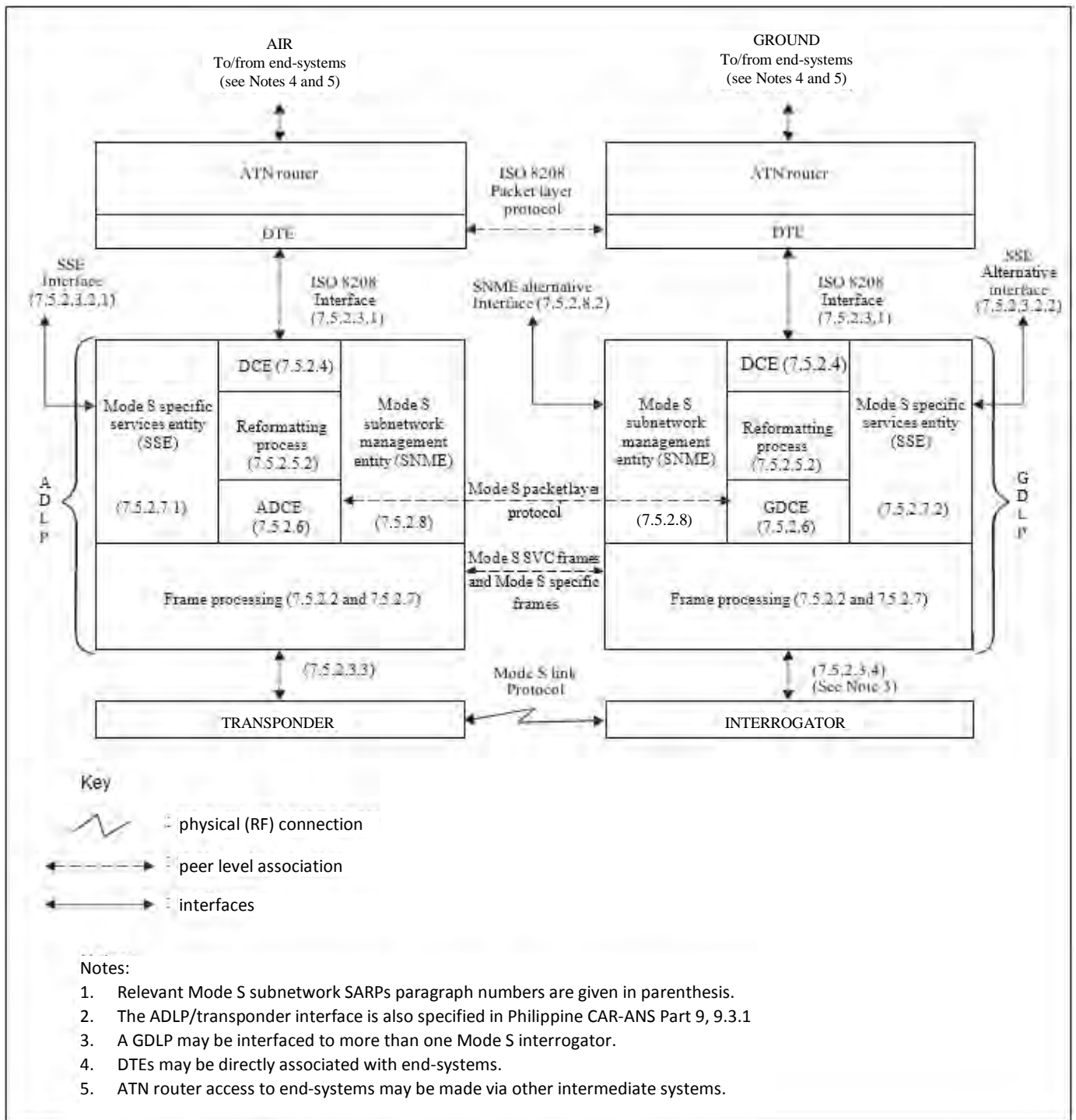## 7.5.2   MODE S CHARACTERISTICS

7.5.2.1   General provisions

Note 1 - Reference ISO document. When the term "ISO 8208" is referred to in this standard, it means the ISO Standard "Information technology - Data communications - X.25 Packet Layer Protocol for Data Terminal Equipment, Reference Number ISO/IEC 8208: 1990(E)".
Note 2 - The overall architecture of the Mode S subnetwork (see diagram on Functional Elements of the Mode S subnetwork below) is presented in the diagram on the following page.

Note 3 - The processing splits into three different paths. The first consists of the processing of switched virtual circuits (SVCs), the second consists of the processing of Mode S specific services, and the third consists of the processing of subnetwork management information. SVCs utilize the reformatting process and the ADCE or GDCE function. Mode S specific services utilize the Mode S specific services entity (SSE) function.

Functional elements of the Mode S subnetwork

```
Key

∿        physical (RF) connection

◄------►  peer level association

◄──────►  interfaces
```

Notes:
1. Relevant Mode S subnetwork SARPs paragraph numbers are given in parenthesis.
2. The ADLP/transponder interface is also specified in Philippine CAR-ANS Part 9, 9.3.1
3. A GDLP may be interfaced to more than one Mode S interrogator.
4. DTEs may be directly associated with end-systems.
5. ATN router access to end-systems may be made via other intermediate systems.

7.5.2.1.1 *Message c ategories*. The Mode S subnetwork shall only carry aeronautical communications classified under categories of flight safety and flight regularity as specified in CAR-ANS Part 2, 2.8.1.8.4 and 2.8.1.8.6.

7.5.2.1.2 *Signals in space*. The signal-in-space characteristics of the Mode S subnetwork shall conform to the provisions contained in CAR-ANS Part 9, 9.3.1.2.

7.5.2.1.3 *Code and byte independency*. The Mode S subnetwork shall be capable of code and byte independent transmission of digital data.

7.5.2.1.4 *Data transfer.* Data shall be conveyed over the Mode S data link in segments using either standard length message (SLM) protocols or extended length message (ELM) protocols as defined in 9.3.1.2.6.11 and 9.3.1.2.7 of CAR-ANS Part 9.

Note 1 - An SLM segment is the contents of one 56-bit MA or MB field. An ELM segment is the contents of one 80-bit MC or MD field.

Note 2 - An SLM frame is the contents of up to four linked MA or MB fields. An ELM frame is the contents of 2 to 16 MC or 1 to 16 MD fields.

7.5.2.1.5   *Bit numbering.* In the description of the data exchange fields, the bits shall be numbered in the order of their transmission, beginning with bit 1. Bit numbers shall continue through the second and higher segments of multi-segment frames. Unless otherwise stated, numerical values encoded by groups (fields) of bits shall be encoded using positive binary notation and the first bit transmitted shall be the most significant bit (MSB) (9.3.1.2.3.1.3 of CAR-ANS Part 9).

7.5.2.1.6   *Unassigned bits.* When the length of the data is not sufficient to occupy all bit positions within a message field or subfield, the unassigned bit positions shall be set to 0.

7.5.2.2   Frames

7.5.2.2.1   UPLINK FRAMES

7.5.2.2.1.1   *SLM frame.* An uplink SLM frame shall be composed of up to four selectively addressed Comm-A segments.

Note — Each Comm-A segment (MA field) received by the ADLP is accompanied by the first 32 bits of the interrogation that delivered the segment (9.3.1.2.10.5.2.1.1 of CAR-ANS Part 9). Within these 32 bits is the 16-bit special designator (SD) field (9.3.1.2.6.1.4 of CAR-ANS Part 9).

7.5.2.2.1.1.1   *SD field.* When the designator identification (DI) field (bits 14-16) has a code value of 1 or 7, the special designator (SD) field (bits 17-32) of each Comm-A interrogation shall be used to obtain the interrogator identifier subfield (IIS, bits 17-20) and the linked Comm-A subfield (*LAS*, bits 30-32). The action to be taken shall depend on the value of LAS. The contents of *LAS* and IIS shall be retained and shall be associated with the Comm-A message segment for use in assembling the frame as indicated below. All fields other than the *LAS* field shall be as defined in 9.3.1.2 of CAR-ANS Part 9.

Note - The SD field structure is shown in Figure 7.5-1 at the end of this Chapter. All figures and tables are located at the end of this chapter.)

7.5.2.2.1.1.2   *LAS* coding. The 3-bit *LAS* subfield shall be coded as follows:

LAS	*MEANING*
0	single segment
1	linked, 1st segment
2	linked, 2nd but not final segment
3	linked, 3rd but not final segment
4	linked, 4th and final segment
5	linked, 2nd and final segment
6	linked, 3rd and final segment

7   unassigned

7.5.2.2.1.1.3   *Single segment SLM frame*. If *LAS* = 0, the data in the MA field shall be considered a complete frame and shall be made available for further processing.

7.5.2.2.1.1.4   *Multiple segment SLM frame*. The ADLP shall accept and assemble linked 56-bit Comm-A segments associated with all sixteen possible interrogator identifier (II) codes. Correct linking of Comm-A segments shall be achieved by requiring that all Comm-A segments have the same value of IIS. If *LAS* = 1 through 6, the frame shall consist of two to four Comm-A segments as specified in the following paragraphs.

7.5.2.2.1.1.4.1   *Initial segment*. If *LAS* = 1, the MA field shall be assembled as the initial segment of an SLM frame. The initial segment shall be stored until all segments of the frame have been received or the frame is cancelled.

7.5.2.2.1.1.4.2   *Intermediate segment*. If *LAS* = 2 or 3, the MA field shall be assembled in numerical order as an intermediate segment of the SLM frame. It shall be associated with previous segments containing the same value of IIS.

7.5.2.2.1.1.4.3   *Final segment*. If *LAS* = 4, 5 or 6, the MA field shall be assembled as the final segment of the SLM frame. It shall be associated with previous segments containing the same value of IIS.

7.5.2.2.1.1.4.4   *Frame completion*. The frame shall be considered complete and shall be made available for further processing as soon as all segments of the frame have been received.

7.5.2.2.1.1.4.5   *Frame cancellation*. An incomplete SLM frame shall be cancelled if one or more of the following conditions apply:

a)   a new initial segment (*LAS* = 1) is received with the same value of IIS. In this case, the new initial segment shall be retained as the initial segment of a new SLM frame;

b)   the sequence of received *LAS* codes (after the elimination of duplicates) is not contained in the following list:

1)   LAS = 0
2)   LAS = 1,5
3)   LAS = 1,2,6
4)   LAS = 1,6,2
5)   LAS = 1,2,3,4
6)   LAS = 1,3,2,4
7)   LAS = 1,2,4,3
8)   LAS = 1,3,4,2
9)   LAS = 1,4,2,3
10) LAS = 1,4,3,2

c)   *Tc* seconds have elapsed since the last Comm-A segment with the same value of IIS was received (Please refer to Table 7.5-1 at the end of this Chapter).

7.5.2.2.1.1.4.6   *Segment cancellation*. A received segment for an SLM frame shall be discarded if it is an intermediate or final segment and no initial segment has been received with the same value of IIS.

7.5.2.2.1.1.4.7   *Segment duplication*. If a received segment duplicates a currently received segment number with the same value of IIS, the new segment shall replace the currently received segment.

Note - The action of the Mode S subnetwork protocols may result in the duplicate delivery of Comm-A segments.

7.5.2.2.1.2 *ELM frame.* An uplink ELM frame shall consist of from 20 to 160 bytes and shall be transferred from the interrogator to the transponder using the protocol defined in 9.3.1.2.7 of CAR-ANS Part 9. The first 4 bits of each uplink ELM segment (MC field) shall contain the interrogator identifier (II) code of the Mode S interrogator transmitting the ELM. The ADLP shall check the II code of each segment of a completed uplink ELM. If all of the segments contain the same II code, the II code in each segment shall be deleted and the remaining message bits retained as user data for further processing. If all of the segments do not contain the same II code, the entire uplink ELM shall be discarded.

Note - An uplink ELM frame consists of two to sixteen associated Comm-C segments, each of which contains the 4-bit II code. Therefore, the capacity for packet transfer is 19 to 152 bytes per uplink ELM frame.

7.5.2.2.2   DOWNLINK FRAMES

7.5.2.2.2.1   *SLM frame.* A downlink SLM frame shall be composed of up to 4 Comm-B segments. The MB field of the first Comm-B segment of the frame shall contain a 2-bit linked Comm-B subfield (LBS, bits 1 and 2 of the MB field). This subfield shall be used to control linking of up to four Comm-B segments.

Note - The LBS uses the first 2-bit positions in the first segment of a multi or single segment downlink SLM frame. Hence, 54 bits are available for Mode S packet data in the first segment of a downlink SLM frame. The remaining segments of the downlink SLM frame, if any, have 56 bits available.

7.5.2.2.2.1.1   *LBS coding.* Linking shall be indicated by the coding of the LBS subfield of the MB field of the initial Comm-B segment of the SLM frame.

The coding of LBS shall be as follows:

LBS   MEANING

0 single segment
1 initial segment of a two-segment SLM frame
2 initial segment of a three-segment SLM frame
3 initial segment of a four-segment SLM frame

7.5.2.2.2.1.2   *Linking protocol*

7.5.2.2.2.1.2.1   In the Comm-B protocol, the initial segment shall be transmitted using the air-initiated or multisite directed protocols. The LBS field of the initial segment shall indicate to the ground the number of additional segments to be transferred (if any). Before the transmission of the initial segment to the transponder, the remaining segments of the SLM frame (if any) shall be transferred to the transponder for transmission to the interrogator using the ground-initiated Comm-B protocol. These segments shall be accompanied by control codes that cause the segments to be inserted in ground-initiated Comm-B registers 2, 3 or 4, associated respectively with the second, third, or fourth segment of the frame.

7.5.2.2.2.1.2.2   Close-out of the air-initiated segment that initiated the protocol shall not be performed until all segments have been successfully transferred.

Note - The linking procedure including the use of the ground-initiated Comm-B protocol is performed by the ADLP.

7.5.2.2.2.1.3   *Directing SLM frames.* If the SLM frame is to be multisite-directed, the ADLP shall determine the II code of the Mode S interrogator or cluster of interrogators (7.5.2.8.1.3) that shall receive the SLM frame.

7.5.2.2.2.2   *ELM FRAME*

Note — A downlink ELM consists of one to sixteen associated Comm-D segments.

7.5.2.2.2.2.1   *Procedure.* Downlink ELM frames shall be used to deliver messages greater than or equal to 28 bytes and shall be formed using the protocol defined in 9.3.1.2.7 of CAR-ANS Part 9.

7.5.2.2.2.2.2   *Directing ELM frames.* If the ELM frame is to be multisite-directed, the ADLP shall determine the II code of the Mode S interrogator or cluster of interrogators (7.5.2.8.1.3) that shall receive the ELM frame.

7.5.2.2.3 *XDLP frame processing.* Frame processing shall be performed on all Mode S packets (except for the MSP packet) as specified in 7.5.2.2.3 to 7.5.2.2.5. Frame processing for Mode S specific services shall be performed as specified in 7.5.2.7.

7.5.2.2.3.1 *Packet length.* All packets (including a group of packets multiplexed into a single frame) shall be transferred in a frame consisting of the smallest number of segments needed to accommodate the packet. The user data field shall be an integral multiple of bytes in length. A 4-bit parameter (LV) shall be provided in the Mode S DATA, CALL REQUEST, CALL ACCEPT, CLEAR REQUEST and INTERRUPT packet headers so that during unpacking no additional bytes are added to the user data field. The LV field shall define the number of full bytes used in the last segment of a frame. During LV calculations, the 4-bit II code in the last segment of an uplink ELM message shall be (1) ignored for uplink ELM frames with an odd number of Comm-C segments and (2) counted for uplink ELM frames with an even number of Comm-C segments. The value contained in the LV field shall be ignored if the packet is multiplexed.

Note - A specific length field is used to define the length of each element of a multiplexed packet. Therefore the LV field value is not used. LV field error handling is described in Tables 7.5-16 and 7.5-19 at the end of this Chapter.

7.5.2.2.3.2   Multiplexing. When multiplexing multiple Mode S packet7.s into single SLM on ELM frame, the following procedures shall be used. Multiplexing of the packets within the ADLP shall not be applied to packets associated with SVCs of different priorities.

Note — Multiplexing is not performed on MSP packets.

7.5.2.2.3.2.1 Multiplexing *optimization.* When multiple packets are awaiting transfer to the same XDLP, they shall be multiplexed into a single frame in order to optimize throughput, provided that packets associated with SVCs of different priorities are not multiplexed together.

7.5.2.2.3.2.2   *Structure.* The structure of the multiplexed packets shall be as follows:

HEADER:6 or 8	LENGTH:8	1ST PACKET:v	LENGTH:8	2ND PACKET:v

Note - A number in the field signifies the field length in bits; "v" signifies that the field is of variable length.

7.5.2.2.3.2.2.1 *Multiplexing header.* The header for the multiplexed packets shall be as follows:

DP:1	MP:1	SP:2	ST:2	FILL2:0 or 2

Where,

Data packet type (DP) = 0
MSP packet type (MP) = 1
Supervisory packet (SP) = 3
Supervisory type (ST) = 2

Note — See Figure 7.5-23 at the end of this Chapter for a definition for the field structure used in the multiplexing header.

7.5.2.2.3.2.2.2 *Length*. This field shall contain the length of the following packet in bytes. Any error detected in a multiplexed DATA packet, such as inconsistency between length as indicated in the LENGTH field and the length of the frame hosting that packet, shall result in the discarding of the packet unless the error can be determined to be limited to the LENGTH field, in which case a REJECT packet with the expected PS value can be sent.

7.5.2.2.3.2.2.2.1 For multiplex packets, if the entire packet cannot be de-multiplexed, then the first constituent packet shall be treated as a format error, and the remainder shall be discarded.

7.5.2.2.3.2.3 *Termination*. The end of a frame containing a sequence of multiplexed packets shall be determined by one of the following events:

a) a length field of all zeros; or

b) less than eight bits left in the frame.

7.5.2.2.3.3 *MODE S CHANNEL SEQUENCE PRESERVATION*

7.5.2.2.3.3.1 *Application*. In the event that multiple Mode S frames from the same SVC are awaiting transfer to the same XDLP, the following procedure shall be used.

7.5.2.2.3.3.2 *Procedure*

Note 1 - SLM and ELM transactions can occur independently.

Note 2 - Uplink and downlink transactions can occur independently.

7.5.2.2.3.3.2.1 *SLM frames*. SLM frames awaiting transfer shall be transmitted in the order received.

7.5.2.2.3.3.2.2 *ELM frames*. ELM frames awaiting transfer shall be transmitted in the order received.

7.5.2.2.4 GDLP FRAME PROCESSING

7.5.2.2.4.1 *GENERAL PROVISIONS*

7.5.2.2.4.1.1 The GDLP shall determine the data link capability of the ADLP/transponder installation from the data link capability report (7.5.2.9) before performing any data link activity with that ADLP.

7.5.2.2.4.1.2 GDLP frame processing shall provide to the interrogator all data for the uplink transmission that are not provided directly by the interrogator.

7.5.2.2.4.2 *Delivery s tatus*. GDLP frame processing shall accept an indication from the interrogator function that a specified uplink frame that was previously transferred to the interrogator has been successfully delivered over the ground-to-air link.

7.5.2.2.4.3 *Aircraft address*. GDLP frame processing shall receive from the interrogator along with the data in each downlink SLM or ELM frame, the 24-bit address of the aircraft that transmitted the frame. GDLP frame processing shall be capable of transferring to the interrogator the 24-bit address of the aircraft that is to receive an uplink SLM or ELM frame.

7.5.2.2.4.4 *Mode S protocol type identification*. GDLP frame processing shall indicate to the interrogator the protocol to be used to transfer the frame: standard length message protocol, extended length message protocol or broadcast protocol.

7.5.2.2.4.5 *Frame d etermination*. A Mode S packet (including multiplexed packets but excluding MSP packets) intended for uplink and less than or equal to 28 bytes shall be sent as an SLM frame. A Mode S packet greater than 28 bytes shall be sent as an uplink ELM frame for transponders with ELM capability, using M-bit processing as necessary (7.5.2.5.1.4.1). If the transponder does not have ELM capability, packets greater than 28 bytes shall be sent using the M-bit or S-bit (7.5.2.5.1.4.2) assembly procedures as necessary and multiple SLM frames.

Note — The Mode S D ATA, CALL RE QUEST, C ALL AC CEPT, C LEAR REQ UEST a nd INTERRUPT packets are the only Mode S packets that use M-bit or S-bit sequencing.

7.5.2.2.5   ADLP FRAME PROCESSING

7.5.2.2.5.1 *General provisions*. With the possible exception of the last 24 bits (address/parity), ADLP frame processing shall accept from the transponder the entire content of both 56-bit and 112-bit received uplink transmissions, excluding allcall and ACAS interrogations. ADLP frame processing shall provide to the transponder all data for the downlink transmission that is not provided directly by the transponder (7.5.2.3.3).

7.5.2.2.5.2 *Delivery s tatus*. ADLP frame processing shall accept an indication from the transponder that a specified downlink frame that was previously transferred to the transponder has been closed out.

7.5.2.2.5.3 *Interrogator identifier*. ADLP frame processing shall accept from the transponder, along with the data in each uplink SLM and ELM, the interrogator identifier (II) code of the interrogator that transmitted the frame. ADLP frame processing shall transfer to the transponder the II code of the interrogator or cluster of interrogators that shall receive a multisite-directed frame.

7.5.2.2.5.4 *Mode S protocol type identification*. ADLP frame processing shall indicate to the transponder the protocol to be used to transfer the frame: ground-initiated, air-initiated, broadcast, multisite-directed, standard length or extended length.

7.5.2.2.5.5 *Frame ca ncellation*. ADLP frame processing shall be capable of cancelling downlink frames previously transferred to the transponder for transmission but for which a close-out has not been indicated. If more than one frame is stored within the transponder, the cancellation procedure shall be capable of cancelling the stored frames selectively.

7.5.2.2.5.6 *Frame d etermination*. A Mode S packet (including multiplexed packets but excluding MSP packets) intended for downlink and less than or equal to 222 bits shall be sent as an SLM frame. A Mode S packet greater than 222 bits shall be sent as a downlink ELM frame for transponders with ELM capability using M-bit processing as necessary (7.5.2.5.1.4.1). When M-bit processing is used, all ELM frames containing $M = 1$ shall contain the maximum number of ELM segments that the transponder is capable of transmitting in response to one requesting interrogation ($UF = 24$) (7.5.2.9.1). If the transponder does not have ELM capability, packets greater than 222 bits shall be sent using the M-bit or S-bit (7.5.2.5.1.4.2) assembly procedures and multiple SLM frames.

Note — The maximum length of a downlink SLM frame is 222 bits. This is equal to 28 bytes (7 bytes for 4 Comm-B segments) minus the 2-bit linked Comm-B subfield (7.5.2.2.2.1.1).

7.5.2.2.6   PRIORITY MANAGEMENT

7.5.2.2.6.1 *ADLP priority management*. Frames shall be transferred from the ADLP to the transponder in the following order of priority (highest first):

a) Mode S specific services;
b)   search requests (7.5.2.8.1);
c) frames containing only high priority SVC packets; and
d) frames containing only low priority SVC packets.

7.5.2.2.6.2 *GDLP PRI ORITY M ANAGEMENT.* Uplink frames shall be transferred in the following order of priority (highest first):

a)   Mode S specific services;
b) frames containing at least one Mode S ROUTE packet (7.5.2.8.1);
c)   frames containing at least one high priority SVC packet; and
d) frames containing only low priority SVC packets.

7.5.2.3   Data exchange interfaces

7.5.2.3.1   THE DTE ISO 8208 INTERFACE

7.5.2.3.1.1 *General provisions*. The interface between the XDLP and the DTE(s) shall conform to ISO 8208 packet layer protocol (PLP). The XDLP shall support the procedures of the DTE as specified in ISO 8208. As such, the XDLP shall contain a DCE (7.5.2.4).

7.5.2.3.1.2 *Physical and link layer requirements for the DTE/DCE interface*. The requirements are:

a)   the interface shall be code and byte independent and shall not impose restrictions on the sequence, order, or pattern of the bits transferred within a packet; and

b)   the interface shall support the transfer of variable length network layer packets.

7.5.2.3.1.3   *DTE ADDRESS*

7.5.2.3.1.3.1   *Ground DTE address*. The ground DTE address shall have a total length of 3 binary coded decimal (BCD) digits, as follows:

$X_0X_1X_2$

X_0 shall be the most significant digit. Ground DTE addresses shall be decimal numbers in the range of 0 through 255 coded in BCD. Assignment of the DTE address shall be a local issue. All DTEs connected to GDLPs having overlapping coverage shall have unique addresses. GDLPs which have a flying time less than T_r (please refer to Table 7.5-1) between their coverage areas shall be regarded as having overlapping coverage.

7.5.2.3.1.3.2   *Mobile DTE address*. The mobile DTE address shall have a total length of 10 BCD digits, as follows:

$X_0X_1X_2X_3X_4X_5X_6X_7X_8X_9$

X_0 shall be the most significant digit. The digits X_0 to X_7 shall contain the octal representation of the aircraft address coded in BCD. The digits X_8X_9 shall identify a sub-address for specific DTEs on board an aircraft. This sub-address shall be a decimal number in the range of 0 and 15 coded in BCD. The following sub-address assignments shall be used:

00	ATN router
01 to 15	Unassigned

7.5.2.3.1.3.3 *Illegal D TE addresses*. DTE addresses outside of the defined ranges or not conforming to the formats for the ground and mobile DTE addresses specified in 7.5.2.3.1.3.1 and 7.5.2.3.1.3.2 shall be defined to be illegal DTE addresses. The detection of an illegal DTE address in a CALL REQUEST packet shall lead to a rejection of the call as specified in 7.5.2.5.1.5.

7.5.2.3.1.4 *PACKET L AYER PRO TOCOL REQ UIREMENTS O F T HE D TE/DCE INTERFACE*

7.5.2.3.1.4.1 *Capabilities*. The interface between the DTE and the DCE shall conform to ISO 8208 with the following capabilities:

a) expedited data delivery, i.e. the use of INTERRUPT packets with a user data field of up to 32 bytes;
b) priority facility (with two levels, 7.5.2.5.2.1.1.6);
c) fast select (7.5.2.5.2.1.1.13, 7.5.2.5.2.1.1.16); and
d) called/calling address extension facility, if required by local conditions (i.e. the XDLP is connected to the DTE via a network protocol that is unable to contain the Mode S address as defined).

Other ISO 8208 facilities and the D-bit and the Q-bit shall not be invoked for transfer over the Mode S packet layer protocol.

7.5.2.3.1.4.2 *Parameter values*. The timer and counter parameters for the DTE/DCE interface shall conform to the default ISO 8208 values.

7.5.2.3.2 MODE S SPECIFIC SERVICES INTERFACE

Note - Mode S specific services consist of the broadcast Comm-A and Com m-B, GICB and MSP.

7.5.2.3.2.1 *ADLP*

7.5.2.3.2.1.1 *General provisions*. The ADLP shall support the accessing of Mode S specific services through the provision of one or more separate ADLP interfaces for this purpose.

7.5.2.3.2.1.2 *Functional c apability*. Message and control coding via this interface shall support all of the capabilities specified in 7.5.2.7.1.

7.5.2.3.2.2 GDLP

7.5.2.3.2.2.1 *General provisions*. The GDLP shall support the accessing of Mode S specific services through the provision of a separate GDLP interface for this purpose and/or by providing access to these services through the DTE/DCE interface.

7.5.2.3.2.2.2 *Functional c apability*. Message and control coding via this interface shall support all of the capabilities specified in 7.5.2.7.2.

7.5.2.3.3 ADLP/TRANSPONDER INTERFACE

7.5.2.3.3.1 *TRANSPONDER TO ADLP*

7.5.2.3.3.1.1 The ADLP shall accept an indication of protocol type from the transponder in connection with data transferred from the transponder to the ADLP. This shall include the following types of protocols:

a) surveillance interrogation;
b) Comm-A interrogation;
c) Comm-A broadcast interrogation; and
d) uplink ELM.

The ADLP shall also accept the II code of the interrogator used to transmit the surveillance, Comm-A or uplink ELM.

Note - Transponders will not output all-call and ACAS information on this interface.

7.5.2.3.3.1.2   The ADLP shall accept control information from the transponder indicating the status of downlink transfers. This shall include:

   a)   Comm-B close-out;
   b)   Comm-B broadcast timeout; and
   c)   downlink ELM close-out.

7.5.2.3.3.1.3   The ADLP shall have access to current information defining the communication capability of the Mode S transponder with which it is operating. This information shall be used to generate the data link capability report (7.5.2.9).

7.5.2.3.3.2   *ADLP TO TRANSPONDER*

7.5.2.3.3.2.1   The ADLP shall provide an indication of protocol type to the transponder in connection with data transferred from the ADLP to the transponder. This shall include the following types of protocols:

   a)   ground-initiated Comm-B;
   b)   air-initiated Comm-B;
   c)   multisite-directed Comm-B;
   d)   Comm-B broadcast;
   e)   downlink ELM; and
   f)   multisite-directed downlink ELM.

The ADLP shall also provide the II code for transfer of a multisite-directed Comm-B or downlink ELM and the Comm-B data selector (BDS) code (9.3.1.2.6.11.2 of CAR-ANS Part 9) for a ground-initiated Comm-B.

7.5.2.3.3.2.2   The ADLP shall be able to perform frame cancellation as specified in 7.5.2.2.5.5.

7.5.2.3.4   GDLP/MODE S INTERROGATOR INTERFACE

7.5.2.3.4.1   *INTERROGATOR TO GDLP*

7.5.2.3.4.1.1 The GDLP shall accept an indication of protocol type from the interrogator in connection with data transferred from the interrogator to the GDLP. This shall include the following types of protocols:

   a)   ground-initiated Comm-B;
   b)   air-initiated Comm-B;
   c)   air-initiated Comm-B broadcast; and
   d)   downlink ELM.

The GDLP shall also accept the BDS code used to identify the ground-initiated Comm-B segment.

7.5.2.3.4.1.2   The GDLP shall accept control information from the interrogator indicating the status of uplink transfers and the status of the addressed Mode S aircraft.

7.5.2.3.4.2   *GDLP to interrogator.* The GDLP shall provide an indication of protocol type to the interrogator in connection with data transferred from the GDLP to the interrogator. This shall include the following types of protocols:

a)   Comm-A interrogation;
b)   Comm-A broadcast interrogation;

c) uplink ELM; and

d) ground-initiated Comm-B request.

The GDLP shall also provide the BDS code for the ground-initiated Comm-B protocol.

7.5.2.4 DCE operation

Note — The DCE process within the XDLP acts as a peer process to the DTE. The DCE supports the operations of the DTE with the capability specified in 7.5.2.3.1.4. The following requirements do not specify format definitions and flow control on the DTE/DCE interface. The specifications and definitions in ISO 8208 apply for these cases.

7.5.2.4.1   State transitions. The DCE shall operate as a state machine. Upon entering a state, the DCE shall perform the actions specified in Table 7.5-2. State transitions and additional action(s) shall be as specified in Tables 7.5-3 through 7.5-12 at the end of this Chapter.

Note — The next state transition (if any) that occurs when the DCE receives a packet from the DTE is specified by Tables 7.5-3 through 7.5-8. These tables are organized according to the hierarchy illustrated in Figure 7.5-2. The same transitions are defined in Tables 7.5-9 through 7.5-12 when the DCE receives a packet from the XDCE (via the reformatting process).

7.5.2.4.2   DISPOSITION OF PACKETS

7.5.2.4.2.1   Upon receipt of a packet from the DTE, the packet shall be forwarded or not forwarded to the XDCE (via the reformatting process) according to the parenthetical instructions contained in Tables 7.5-3 to 7.5-8. If no parenthetical instruction is listed or if the parenthetical instruction indicates "do not forward", the packet shall be discarded.

7.5.2.4.2.2   Upon receipt of a packet from the XDCE (via the reformatting process), the packet shall be forwarded or not forwarded to the DTE according to the parenthetical instructions contained in Tables 7.5-9 to 7.5-12. If no parenthetical instruction is listed or if the parenthetical instruction indicates "do not forward", the packet shall be discarded.

7.5.2.5 Mode S packet layer processing

7.5.2.5.1   GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

7.5.2.5.1.1   *BUFFER REQUIREMENTS*

7.5.2.5.1.1.1   *ADLP buffer requirements*

7.5.2.5.1.1.1.1 The following requirements apply to the entire ADLP and shall be interpreted as necessary for each of the main processes (DCE, reformatting, ADCE, frame processing and SSE).

7.5.2.5.1.1.1.2   The ADLP shall be capable of maintaining sufficient buffer space for fifteen SVCs:

a)   maintain sufficient buffer space to hold fifteen Mode S subnetwork packets of 152 bytes each in the uplink direction per SVC for a transponder with uplink ELM capability or 28 bytes otherwise;

b)   maintain sufficient buffer space to hold fifteen Mode S subnetwork packets of 160 bytes each in the downlink direction per SVC for a transponder with downlink ELM capability or 28 bytes otherwise;

c)   maintain sufficient buffer space for two Mode S subnetwork INTERRUPT packets of 35 bytes each (user data field plus control information), one in each direction, for each SVC;

d)   maintain sufficient resequencing buffer space for storing thirty-one Mode S subnetwork packets of 152 bytes each in the uplink direction per SVC for a transponder with uplink ELM capability or 28 bytes otherwise; and

e) maintain sufficient buffer space for the temporary storage of at least one Mode S packet of 160 bytes undergoing M-bit or S-bit processing in each direction per SVC.

7.5.2.5.1.1.1.3   The ADLP shall be capable of maintaining a buffer of 1 600 bytes in each direction to be shared among all MSPs.

7.5.2.5.1.1.2   *GDLP buffer requirements*

7.5.2.5.1.1.2.1 The GDLP should be capable of maintaining sufficient buffer space for an average of 4 SVCs for each Mode S aircraft in the coverage area of the interrogators connected to it, assuming all aircraft have ELM capability.

Note - Additional b uffer s pace m ay b e r equired i f D TEs a ssociated w ith en d-systems a re supported.

7.5.2.5.1.2   *CHANNEL NUMBER POOLS*

7.5.2.5.1.2.1 The XDLP shall maintain several SVC channel number pools; the DTE/DCE (ISO 8208) interface uses one set. Its organization, structure, and use shall be as defined in the ISO 8208 standard. The other channel pools shall be used on the ADCE/GDCE interface.

7.5.2.5.1.2.2   The GDLP shall manage a pool of temporary channel numbers in the range of 1 to 3, for each ground DTE/ADLP pair. Mode S CALL REQUEST packets generated by the GDLP shall contain the ground DTE address and a temporary channel number allocated from the pool of that ground DTE. The GDLP shall not reuse a temporary channel number allocated to an SVC that is still in the CALL REQUEST state.

Note 1 - The us e of t emporary c hannel num bers al lows t he G DLP t o h ave up t o t hree ca ll requests in process at the same time for a particular ground DTE and ADLP combination. It also allows the GDLP or ADLP to clear a c hannel before the permanent channel number is assigned.

Note 2 - The ADLP m ay be in contact with multiple ground DTEs at any one time. All the ground DTEs use temporary channel numbers ranging from 1 to 3.

7.5.2.5.1.2.3   The ADLP shall use the ground DTE address to distinguish the temporary channel numbers used by the various ground DTEs. The ADLP shall assign a permanent channel number (in the range of 1 to 15) to all SVCs and shall inform the GDLP of the assigned number by including it in the Mode S CALL REQUEST by ADLP or Mode S CALL ACCEPT by ADLP packets. The temporary channel number shall be included in the Mode S CALL ACCEPT by ADLP together with the permanent channel number in order to define the association of these channel numbers. The ADLP shall continue to associate the temporary channel number with the permanent channel number of an SVC until the SVC is returned to the READY ($p1$) state, or else, while in the DATA TRANSFER ($p4$) state, a Mode S CALL REQUEST by GDLP packet is received bearing the same temporary channel number. A non-zero permanent channel number in the Mode S CLEAR REQUEST by ADLP, CLEAR REQUEST by GDLP, CLEAR CONFIRMATION by ADLP or CLEAR CONFIRMATION by GDLP packet shall indicate that the permanent channel number shall be used and the temporary channel number shall be ignored. In the event that an XDLP is required to send one of these packets in the absence of a permanent channel number, the permanent channel number shall be set to zero, which shall indicate to the peer XDLP that the temporary channel number is to be used.

Note - The use of a zero permanent channel number allows the ADLP to clear an SVC when no permanent channel number is available, and allows the GDLP to do likewise before it has been informed of the permanent channel number.

7.5.2.5.1.2.4 The channel number used by the DTE/DCE interface and that used by the ADCE/GDCE interface shall be assigned independently. The reformatting process shall maintain an association table between the DTE/DCE and the ADCE/GDCE channel numbers.

7.5.2.5.1.3 *Receive ready and receive not ready conditions*. The ISO 8208 interface and the ADCE/GDCE interface management procedures shall be independent operations since each system must be able to respond to separate receive ready and receive not ready indications.

7.5.2.5.1.4 *PROCESSING OF M-BIT AND S-BIT SEQUENCES*

Note - M-bit processing applies to the sequencing of the DATA packet. S-bit processing applies to t he s equencing of Mode S CA LL R EQUEST, CA LL A CCEPT, CL EAR REQUEST and INTERRUPT packets.

7.5.2.5.1.4.1 *M-bit processing*

Note - The packet size used on the DTE/DCE interface can be different from that used on the ADCE/GDCE interface.

7.5.2.5.1.4.1.1 M-bit processing shall be used when DATA packets are reformatted (7.5.2.5.2). M-bit processing shall utilize the specifications contained in the ISO 8208 standard. The M-bit sequence processing shall apply on a per channel basis. The M-bit set to 1 shall indicate that a user data field continues in the subsequent DATA packet. Subsequent packets in an M-bit sequence shall use the same header format (i.e. the packet format excluding the user data field).

7.5.2.5.1.4.1.2 If the packet size for the XDCE (7.5.2.6.4.2) interface is larger than that used on the DTE/DCE interface, packets shall be combined to the extent possible as dictated by the M-bit, when transmitting a Mode S DATA packet. If the packet size is smaller on the XDCE interface than that defined on the DTE/DCE interface, packets shall be fragmented to fit into the smaller Mode S packet using M-bit assembly.

7.5.2.5.1.4.1.3 A packet shall be combined with subsequent packets if the packet is filled and more packets exist in the M-bit sequence (M-bit = 1). A packet smaller than the maximum packet size defined for this SVC (partial packet) shall only be allowed when the M-bit indicates the end of an M-bit sequence. A received packet smaller than the maximum packet size with M-bit equal to 1 shall cause a reset to be generated as specified in ISO 8208 and the remainder of the sequence should be discarded.

7.5.2.5.1.4.1.4 In order to decrease delivery delay, reformatting shall be performed on the partial receipt of an M-bit sequence, rather than delay reformatting until the complete M-bit sequence is received.

7.5.2.5.1.4.2 *S-bit processing*. S-bit processing shall apply only to Mode S CALL REQUEST, CALL ACCEPT, CLEAR REQUEST and INTERRUPT packets. This processing shall be performed as specified for M-bit processing (7.5.2.5.1.4.1) except that the packets associated with any S-bit sequence whose reassembly is not completed in *Tq* seconds (Tables 7.5-1 and 7.5-13) shall be discarded (7.5.2.6.3.6, 7.5.2.6.4.5.2 and 7.5.2.6.9), and receipt of a packet shorter than the maximum packet size with S = 1 shall cause the entire S-bit sequence to be treated as a format error in accordance with Table 7.5-16.

7.5.2.5.1.5 *MODE S SUBNETWORK ERROR PROCESSING FOR ISO 8208 PACKETS*

7.5.2.5.1.5.1 *D-bit*. If the XDLP receives a DATA packet with the D-bit set to 1, the XDLP shall send a RESET REQUEST packet to the originating DTE containing a cause code (CC) = 133 and a diagnostic code (DC) = 166. If the D-bit is set to 1 in a CALL REQUEST packet, the D-bit shall be ignored by the XDLP. The D-bit of the corresponding CALL ACCEPT packet shall always be set to 0. The use of CC is optional.

7.5.2.5.1.5.2 *Q-bit*. If the XDLP receives a DATA packet with the Q-bit set to 1, the XDLP shall send a RESET REQUEST packet to the originating DTE containing CC = 133 and DC = 83. The use of CC is optional.

7.5.2.5.1.5.3 *Invalid priority*. If the XDLP receives a call request with a connection priority value equal to 2 through 254, the XDLP shall clear the virtual circuit using DC = 66 and CC = 131. The use of CC is optional.

7.5.2.5.1.5.4 *Unsupported facility*. If the XDLP receives a call request with a request for a facility that it cannot support, the XDLP shall clear the virtual circuit using DC = 65 and C = 131. The use of CC is optional.

7.5.2.5.1.5.5 *Illegal calling DTE address*. If the XDLP receives a call request with an illegal calling DTE address (7.5.2.3.1.3.3), the XDLP shall clear the virtual circuit using DC = 68 and CC = 141. The use of CC is optional.

7.5.2.5.1.5.6 *Illegal called DTE address*. If the XDLP receives a call request with an illegal called DTE address (7.5.2.3.1.3.3), the XDLP shall clear the virtual circuit using DC = 67 and CC = 141. The use of CC is optional.

7.5.2.5.2 REFORMATTING PROCESS

Note - The r eformatting pr ocess i s di vided i nto t wo s ubprocesses: upl ink f ormatting and downlink formatting. For the A DLP, the uplink pr ocess r eformats Mode S packets i nto ISO 8208 packets and the downlink process reformats ISO 8208 packets into Mode S packets. For the G DLP, t he upl ink pr ocess r eformats ISO 8208 pac kets i nto Mod e S pac kets and t he downlink process reformats Mode S packets into ISO 8208 packets.

7.5.2.5.2.1 *CALL REQUEST BY ADLP*

7.5.2.5.2.1.1 *Translation into Mode S packets*

7.5.2.5.2.1.1.1 *Translated packet format*. Reception by the ADLP reformatting process of an ISO 8208 CALL REQUEST packet from the local DCE shall result in the generation of corresponding Mode S CALL REQUEST by ADLP packet(s) (as determined by S-bit processing (7.5.2.5.1.4.2)) as follows:

DP:1	MP:1	SP:2	ST:2	FILL2:0 or 2	P:1	FILL:1	SN:6	CH:4	AM:4	AG:8	S:1	FS:2	F:1	LV:4	UD:v

7.5.2.5.2.1.1.2 *Data packet type (DP)*. This field shall be set to 0.

7.5.2.5.2.1.1.3 *MSP packet type (MP)*. This field shall be set to 1.

7.5.2.5.2.1.1.4 *Supervisory packet (SP)*. This field shall be set to 1.

7.5.2.5.2.1.1.5 *Supervisory type (ST)*. This field shall be set to 0.

7.5.2.5.2.1.1.6 *Priority (P)*. This field shall be set to 0 for a low priority SVC and to 1 for a high priority SVC. The value for this field shall be obtained from the data transfer field of the priority facility of the ISO 8208 packet, and shall be set to 0 if the ISO 8208 packet does not contain the priority facility or if a priority of 255 is specified. The other fields of the priority facility shall be ignored.

7.5.2.5.2.1.1.7 *Sequence number (SN)*. For a particular SVC, each packet shall be numbered (7.5.2.6.9.4).

7.5.2.5.2.1.1.8 *Channel number (CH)*. The channel number shall be chosen from the pool of SVC channel numbers available to the ADLP. The pool shall consist of 15 values from 1 through 15. The highest available channel number shall be chosen from the pool. An available channel shall be defined as one in state p1. The correspondence between the channel number used by the Mode S subnetwork and the number used by the DTE/DCE interface shall be maintained while the channel is active.

Note - Also refer to 7.5.2.5.1.2 on channel pool management.

7.5.2.5.2.1.1.9 *Address, mobile (AM)*. This address shall be the mobile DTE sub-address (7.5.2.3.1.3.2) in the range of 0 to 15. The address shall be extracted from the two least significant digits of the calling DTE address contained in the ISO 8208 packet and converted to binary representation.

Note - The 24-bit aircraft address is transferred within the Mode S link layer.

7.5.2.5.2.1.1.10 *Address, ground (AG)*. This address shall be the ground DTE address (7.5.2.3.1.3.1) in the range of 0 to 255. The address shall be extracted from the called DTE address contained in the ISO 8208 packet and converted to binary representation.

7.5.2.5.2.1.1.11 *Fill field*. The fill field shall be used to align subsequent data fields on byte boundaries. When indicated as "FILL:n", the fill field shall be set to a length of "n" bits. When indicated as "FILL1: 0 or 6", the fill field shall be set to a length of 6 bits for a non-multiplexed packet in a downlink SLM frame and 0 bit for all other cases. When indicated as "FILL2: 0 or 2", the fill field shall be set to a length of 0 bit for a non-multiplexed packet in a downlink SLM frame or for a multiplexing header and 2 bits for all other cases.

7.5.2.5.2.1.1.12 *S field (S)*. A value of 1 shall indicate that the packet is part of an S-bit sequence with more packets in the sequence to follow. A value of 0 shall indicate that the sequence ends with this packet. This field shall be set as specified in 7.5.2.5.1.4.2.

7.5.2.5.2.1.1.13 *FS field (FS)*. A value of 0 shall indicate that the packet does not contain fast select data. A value of 2 or 3 shall indicate that the packet contains fast select data. A value of 2 shall indicate normal fast select operation. A value of 3 shall indicate fast select with restricted response. An FS value of 1 shall be undefined.

7.5.2.5.2.1.1.14 *First packet flag (F)*. This field shall be set to 0 in the first packet of an S-bit sequence and in a packet that is not part of an S-bit sequence. Otherwise it shall be set to 1.

7.5.2.5.2.1.1.15 *User data length (LV)*. This field shall indicate the number of full bytes used in the last SLM or ELM segment as defined in 7.5.2.2.3.1.

7.5.2.5.2.1.1.16 *User data field (UD)*. This field shall only be present if optional CALL REQUEST user data (maximum 16 bytes) or fast select user data (maximum 128 bytes) is contained in the ISO 8208 packet. The user data field shall be transferred from ISO 8208 packet unchanged using S-bit processing as specified in 7.5.2.5.1.4.2.

7.5.2.5.2.1.2 T*ranslation into ISO 8208 packets*

7.5.2.5.2.1.2.1 *Translation*. Reception by the GDLP reformatting process of a Mode S CALL REQUEST by ADLP packet (or an S-bit sequence of packets) from the GDCE shall result in the generation of a corresponding ISO 8208 CALL REQUEST packet to the local DCE. The translation from the Mode S packet to the ISO 8208 packet shall be the inverse of the processing defined in 7.5.2.5.2.1.1 with the exceptions as specified in 7.5.2.5.2.1.2.2.

7.5.2.5.2.1.2.2 *Called DTE, calling DTE address and length fields.* The calling DTE address shall be composed of the aircraft address and the value contained in the AM field of the Mode S packet, converted to BCD (7.5.2.3.1.3.2). The called DTE address shall be the ground DTE address contained in the AG field of the Mode S packet, converted to BCD. The length field shall be as defined in ISO 8208.

7.5.2.5.2.2 *CALL REQUEST BY GDLP*

7.5.2.5.2.2.1 *Translation into Mode S packets*

7.5.2.5.2.2.1.1 *General.* Reception by the GDLP reformatting process of an ISO 8208 CALL REQUEST packet from the local DCE shall result in the generation of corresponding Mode S CALL REQUEST by GDLP packet(s) (as determined by S-bit processing (7.5.2.5.1.4.2)) as follows:

DP:1	MP:1	SP:2	ST:2	FILL:2	P:1	FILL:1	SN:6	FILL:2	TC:2	AM:4	AG:8	S:1	FS:2	F:1	LV:4	UD:v

Fields shown in the packet format and not specified in the following paragraphs shall be set as specified in 7.5.2.5.2.1.

7.5.2.5.2.2.1.2 *Data packet type (DP).* This field shall be set to 0.

7.5.2.5.2.2.1.3 *MSP packet type (MP).* This field shall be set to 1.

7.5.2.5.2.2.1.4 *Supervisory packet (SP).* This field shall be set to 1.

7.5.2.5.2.2.1.5 *Supervisory type (ST).* This field shall be set to 0.

7.5.2.5.2.2.1.6 *Temporary channel number field (TC).* This field shall be used to distinguish multiple call requests from a GDLP. The ADLP reformatting process, upon receipt of a temporary channel number, shall assign a channel number from those presently in the READY state, $p1$.

7.5.2.5.2.2.1.7 *Address, ground (AG).* This address shall be the ground DTE address (7.5.2.3.1.3.1) in the range of 0 to 255. The address shall be extracted from the calling DTE address contained in the ISO 8208 packet and converted to binary representation.

7.5.2.5.2.2.1.8 *Address, mobile (AM).* This address shall be the mobile DTE sub-address (7.5.2.3.1.3.2) in the range of 0 to 15. The address shall be extracted from the two least significant digits of the called DTE address contained in the ISO 8208 packet and converted to binary representation.

7.5.2.5.2.2.2 T*ranslation into ISO 8208 packets*

7.5.2.5.2.2.2.1 *Translation.* Reception by the ADLP reformatting process of a Mode S CALL REQUEST by GDLP packet (or an S-bit sequence of packets) from the ADCE shall result in the generation of a corresponding ISO 8208 CALL REQUEST packet to the local DCE. The translation from the Mode S packet to the ISO 8208 packet shall be the inverse of the processing defined in 7.5.2.5.2.2.1 with the exceptions as specified in 7.5.2.5.2.2.2.2.

7.5.2.5.2.2.2.2 *Called DTE, calling DTE address and length fields.* The called DTE address shall be composed of the aircraft address and the value contained in the AM field of the Mode S packet, converted to BCD (7.5.2.3.1.3.2). The calling DTE address shall be the ground DTE address contained in the AG field of the Mode S packet, converted to BCD. The length field shall be as defined in ISO 8208.

7.5.2.5.2.3 *CALL ACCEPT BY ADLP*

7.5.2.5.2.3.1 *Translation into Mode S packets*

7.5.2.5.2.3.1.1 *Translated packet format*. Reception by the ADLP reformatting process of an ISO 8208 CALL ACCEPT packet from the local DCE shall result in the generation of corresponding Mode S CALL ACCEPT by ADLP packet(s) (as determined by S-bit processing (7.5.2.5.1.4.2)) as follows:

DP:1	MP:1	SP:2	ST:2	FILL2:0 or 2	TC:2	SN:6	CH:4	AM:4	AG:8	S:1	FILL:2	F:1	LV:4	UD:v

Fields shown in the packet format and not specified in the following paragraphs shall be set as specified in 7.5.2.5.2.1.

7.5.2.5.2.3.1.2 *Data packet type (DP)*. This field shall be set to 0.

7.5.2.5.2.3.1.3 *MSP packet type (MP)*. This field shall be set to 1.

7.5.2.5.2.3.1.4 *Supervisory packet (SP)*. This field shall be set to 1.

7.5.2.5.2.3.1.5 *Supervisory type (ST)*. This field shall be set to 1.

7.5.2.5.2.3.1.6 *Temporary channel number (TC)*. The TC value in the originating Mode S CALL REQUEST by GDLP packet shall be returned to the GDLP along with the channel number (CH) assigned by the ADLP.

7.5.2.5.2.3.1.7 *Channel number (CH)*. The field shall be set equal to the channel number assigned by the ADLP as determined during the CALL REQUEST procedures for the Mode S connection.

7.5.2.5.2.3.1.8 *Address, mobile and address, ground*. The AM and AG values in the originating Mode S CALL REQUEST by GDLP packet shall be returned in these fields. When present, DTE addresses in the ISO 8208 CALL ACCEPT packet shall be ignored.

7.5.2.5.2.3.2 *Translation into ISO 8208 packets*

7.5.2.5.2.3.2.1 *Translation*. Reception by the GDLP reformatting process of a Mode S CALL ACCEPT by ADLP packet (or an S-bit sequence of packets) from the GDCE shall result in the generation of a corresponding ISO 8208 CALL ACCEPT packet to the local DCE. The translation from the Mode S packet to the ISO 8208 packet shall be the inverse of the processing defined in 7.5.2.5.2.3.1 with the exceptions as specified in 7.5.2.5.2.3.2.2.

7.5.2.5.2.3.2.2 *Called DTE, calling DTE address and length fields*. Where present, the called DTE address shall be composed of the aircraft address and the value contained in the AM field of the Mode S packet, converted to BCD (7.5.2.3.1.3.2). Where present, the calling DTE address shall be the ground DTE address contained in the AG field of the Mode S packet, converted to BCD. The length field shall be as defined in ISO 8208.

Note - The called and calling DTE addresses are optional in the corresponding ISO 8208 packet and are not required for correct operation of the Mode S subnetwork.

7.5.2.5.2.4 *CALL ACCEPT BY GDLP*

7.5.2.5.2.4.1 *Translation into Mode S packets*

7.5.2.5.2.4.1.1 *Translated packet format*. Reception by the GDLP reformatting process of an ISO 8208 CALL ACCEPT packet from the local DCE shall result in the generation of corresponding Mode S CALL ACCEPT by GDLP packet(s) (as determined by S-bit processing (7.5.2.5.1.4.2)) as follows:

DP:1	MP:1	SP:2	ST:2	FILL:2	FILL:2	SN:6	CH:4	AM:4	AG:8	S:1	FILL:2	F:1	LV:4	UD:v

Fields shown in the packet format and not specified in the following paragraphs shall be set as specified in 7.5.2.5.2.1.

7.5.2.5.2.4.1.2 *Data packet type (DP)*. This field shall be set to 0.

7.5.2.5.2.4.1.3 *MSP packet type (MP)*. This field shall be set to 1.

7.5.2.5.2.4.1.4 *Supervisory packet (SP)*. This field shall be set to 1.

7.5.2.5.2.4.1.5 *Supervisory type (ST)*. This field shall be set to 1.

7.5.2.5.2.4.1.6 *Address, mobile and addr ess, gr ound*. The AM and AG values in the originating Mode S CALL REQUEST by ADLP packet shall be returned in these fields. When present, DTE addresses in the ISO 8208 CALL ACCEPT packet shall be ignored.

7.5.2.5.2.4.2 *Translation into ISO 8208 packets*

7.5.2.5.2.4.2.1 *Translation*. Reception by the ADLP reformatting process of a Mode S CALL ACCEPT by GDLP packet (or an S-bit sequence of packets) from the ADCE shall result in the generation of a corresponding ISO 8208 CALL ACCEPT packet to the local DCE. The translation from the Mode S packet to the ISO 8208 packet shall be the inverse of the processing defined in

7.5.2.5.2.4.1 with the exceptions as specified in 7.5.2.5.2.4.2.2.

7.5.2.5.2.4.2.2 *Called DTE, calling DTE address and length fields*. Where present, the calling DTE address shall be composed of the aircraft address and the value contained in the AM field of the Mode S packet, converted to BCD (7.5.2.3.1.3.2). Where present, the called DTE address shall be the ground DTE address contained in the AG field of the Mode S packet, converted to BCD. The length field shall be as defined in ISO 8208.

Note - The c alled and c alling D TE addr esses ar e opt ional i n the corresponding ISO 8208 packet and are not required for correct operation of the Mode S subnetwork.

7.5.2.5.2.5 *CLEAR REQUEST BY ADLP*

7.5.2.5.2.5.1 *Translation into Mode S packets*

7.5.2.5.2.5.1.1 *Translated packet format*. Reception by the ADLP reformatting process of an ISO 8208 CLEAR REQUEST packet from the local DCE shall result in the generation of a corresponding Mode S CLEAR REQUEST by ADLP packet(s) (as determined by S-bit processing (7.5.2.5.1.4.2)) as follows:

DP:1	MP:1	SP:2	ST:2	FILL2:0 or 2	TC:2	SN:6	CH:4	AM:4	AG:8	CC:8	DC:8	S:1	FILL:2	F:1	LV:4	UD:v

Fields shown in the packet format and not specified in the following paragraphs shall be set as specified in 7.5.2.5.2.1 and 7.5.2.5.2.2.

7.5.2.5.2.5.1.2 *Data packet type (DP)*. This field shall be set to 0.

7.5.2.5.2.5.1.3 *MSP packet type (MP)*. This field shall be set to 1.

7.5.2.5.2.5.1.4 *Supervisory packet (SP)*. This field shall be set to 1.

7.5.2.5.2.5.1.5 *Channel number (CH)*: If a channel number has been allocated during the call acceptance phase, then CH shall be set to that value, otherwise it shall be set to zero.

7.5.2.5.2.5.1.6 *Temporary channel (TC)*: If a channel number has been allocated during the call acceptance phase, then TC shall be set to zero, otherwise it shall be set to the value used in the CALL REQUEST by GDLP.

7.5.2.5.2.5.1.7 *Supervisory type (ST)*. This field shall be set to 2.

7.5.2.5.2.5.1.8 *Address, ground or address, mobile*. The AG and AM values in the originating Mode S CALL REQUEST by ADLP or CALL REQUEST by GDLP packets shall be returned in these fields. When present, DTE addresses in the ISO 8208 CLEAR REQUEST packet shall be ignored.

7.5.2.5.2.5.1.9 *Clearing cause (CC) and diagnostic code (DC) fields*. These fields shall be transferred without modification from the ISO 8208 packet to the Mode S packet when the DTE has initiated the clear procedure. If the XDLP has initiated the clear procedure, the clearing cause field and diagnostic field shall be as defined in the state tables for the DCE and XDCE (see also 7.5.2.6.3.3). The coding and definition of these fields shall be as specified in ISO 8208.

7.5.2.5.2.5.2 *Translation into ISO 8208 packets*

7.5.2.5.2.5.2.1 *Translation*. Reception by the GDLP reformatting process of a Mode S CLEAR REQUEST by ADLP packet (or an S-bit sequence of packets) from the local GDCE shall result in the generation of a corresponding ISO 8208 CLEAR REQUEST packet to the local DCE. The translation from the Mode S packet to the ISO 8208 packet shall be the inverse of the processing defined in 7.5.2.5.2.5.1 with the exceptions specified in 7.5.2.5.2.5.2.2 and 7.5.2.5.2.5.2.3.

7.5.2.5.2.5.2.2 *Called DTE, calling DTE and length fields*. These fields shall be omitted in the ISO 8208 CLEAR REQUEST packet.

7.5.2.5.2.5.2.3 *Clearing cause field*. This field shall be set taking account of 7.5.2.6.3.3.

7.5.2.5.2.6 *CLEAR REQUEST BY GDLP*

7.5.2.5.2.6.1 *Translation into Mode S packets*

7.5.2.5.2.6.1.1 *Translated packet format*. Reception by the GDLP reformatting process of an ISO 8208 CLEAR REQUEST packet from the local DCE shall result in the generation of corresponding Mode S CLEAR REQUEST by GDLP packet(s) (as determined by S-bit processing (7.5.2.5.1.4.2)) as follows:

DP:1	MP:1	SP:2	ST:2	FILL:2	TC:2	SN:6	CH:4	AM:4	AG:8	CC:8	DC:8	S:1	FILL:2	F:1	LV:4	UD:v

Fields shown in the packet format and not specified in the following paragraphs shall be set as specified in 7.5.2.5.2.1, 7.5.2.5.2.2 and 7.5.2.5.2.5.

7.5.2.5.2.6.1.2 *Data packet type (DP)*. This field shall be set to 0.

7.5.2.5.2.6.1.3 *MSP packet type (MP)*. This field shall be set to 1.

7.5.2.5.2.6.1.4 Supervisory packet (SP). This field shall be set to 1.

7.5.2.5.2.6.1.5 *Channel number (CH)*: If a channel number has been allocated during the call acceptance phase, then CH shall be set to that value, otherwise it shall be set to zero.

7.5.2.5.2.6.1.6 *Temporary channel (TC)*: If a channel number has been allocated during the call acceptance phase, then TC shall be set to zero, otherwise it shall be set to the value used in the CALL REQUEST by GDLP.

7.5.2.5.2.6.1.7 *Supervisory type (ST). This field shall be set to 2.*

7.5.2.5.2.6.2 *Translation into ISO 8208 packets*

7.5.2.5.2.6.2.1 *Translation*. Reception by the ADLP reformatting process of a Mode S CLEAR REQUEST by GDLP packet (or an S-bit sequence of packets) from the local ADCE shall result in the generation of a corresponding ISO 8208 CLEAR REQUEST packet to the local DCE. The translation from the Mode S packet to the ISO 8208 packet shall be the inverse of the processing defined in 7.5.2.5.2.6.1.

7.5.2.5.2.6.2.2 *Called DTE, calling DTE and length fields*. These fields shall be omitted in the ISO 8208 CLEAR REQUEST packet.

7.5.2.5.2.7   *DATA*

7.5.2.5.2.7.1 *Translation into Mode S packets*

7.5.2.5.2.7.1.1 *Translated packet format*. Reception by the XDLP reformatting process of ISO 8208 DATA packet(s) from the local DCE shall result in the generation of corresponding Mode S DATA packet(s) as determined by M-bit processing (7.5.2.5.1.4.1), as follows:

DP:1	M:1	SN:6	FILL1:0 or 6	PS:4	PR:4	CH:4	LV:4	UD:v

7.5.2.5.2.7.1.2   *Data packet type (DP)*. This field shall be set to 1.

7.5.2.5.2.7.1.3   *M field (M)*. A value of 1 shall indicate that the packet is part of an M-bit sequence with more packets in the sequence to follow. A value of 0 shall indicate that the sequence ends with this packet. The appropriate value shall be placed in the M-bit field of the Mode S packet.

Note - See 7.5.2.5.1.4 and ISO 8208 for a complete explanation.

7.5.2.5.2.7.1.4 *Sequence number (SN)*. The sequence number field shall be set as specified in 7.5.2.5.2.1.1.7.

7.5.2.5.2.7.1.5   *Packet send sequence number (PS)*. The packet send sequence number field shall be set as specified in 7.5.2.6.4.4.

7.5.2.5.2.7.1.6 *Packet receive sequence number (PR)*. The packet receive sequence number field shall be set as specified in 7.5.2.6.4.4.

7.5.2.5.2.7.1.7 *Channel number (CH)*. The channel number field shall contain the Mode S channel number that corresponds to the incoming ISO 8208 DATA packet channel number.

7.5.2.5.2.7.1.8   *User data length (LV)*. This field shall indicate the number of full bytes used in the last SLM or ELM segment as defined in 7.5.2.2.3.1.

7.5.2.5.2.7.1.9   *Fill (FILL1)*. This field shall be set as specified in 7.5.2.5.2.1.1.11.

7.5.2.5.2.7.1.10 *User data (UD)*. The user data shall be transferred from the ISO 8208 packet to the Mode S packet utilizing the M-bit packet assembly processing as required.

7.5.2.5.2.7.2 *Translation into ISO 8208 packets*. Reception by the XDLP reformatting process of Mode S DATA packet(s) from the local XDCE shall result in the generation of corresponding ISO 8208 DATA packet(s) to the local DCE. The translation from Mode S packet(s) to the ISO 8208 packet(s) shall be the inverse of the processing defined in 7.5.2.5.2.7.1.

7.5.2.5.2.8   *INTERRUPT*

7.5.2.5.2.8.1   *Translation into Mode S packets*

7.5.2.5.2.8.1.1   *Translated packet format*. Reception by the XDLP reformatting process of an ISO 8208 INTERRUPT packet from the local DCE shall result in the generation of

corresponding Mode S INTERRUPT packet(s) (as determined by S-bit processing (7.5.2.5.1.4.2)) as follows:

DP:1	MP:1	SP:2	ST:2	FILL2:0 or 2	S:1	F:1	SN:6	CH:4	LV:4	UD:v

Fields shown in the packet format and not specified in the following paragraphs shall be set as specified in 7.5.2.5.2.1.

7.5.2.5.2.8.1.2   *Data packet type (DP)*. This field shall be set to 0.

7.5.2.5.2.8.1.3   *MSP packet type (MP)*. This field shall be set to 1.

7.5.2.5.2.8.1.4   *Supervisory packet (SP)*. This field shall be set to 3.

7.5.2.5.2.8.1.5   *Supervisory type (ST)*. This field shall be set to 1.

7.5.2.5.2.8.1.6   *User data length (LV)*. This field shall be set as specified in 7.5.2.2.3.1.

7.5.2.5.2.8.1.7   *User data (UD)*. The user data shall be transferred from the ISO 8208 packet to the Mode S packet using the S-bit packet reassembly processing as required. The maximum size of the user data field for an INTERRUPT packet shall be 32 bytes.

7.5.2.5.2.8.2   *Translation into ISO 8208 packets*. Reception by the XDLP reformatting process of Mode S INTERRUPT packet(s) from the local XDCE shall result in the generation of a corresponding ISO 8208 INTERRUPT packet to the local DCE. The translation from the Mode S packet(s) to the ISO 8208 packet shall be the inverse of the processing defined in 7.5.2.5.2.8.1.

7.5.2.5.2.9   *INTERRUPT CONFIRMATION*

7.5.2.5.2.9.1 *Translation into Mode S packets*

7.5.2.5.2.9.1.1 *Translated packet format*. Reception by the XDLP reformatting process of an ISO 8208 INTERRUPT CONFIRMATION packet from the local DCE shall result in the generation of a corresponding Mode S INTERRUPT CONFIRMATION packet as follows:

DP:1	MP:1	SP:2	ST:2	SS:2	FILL2:0 or 2	SN:6	CH:4	FILL:4

Fields shown in the packet format and not specified in the following paragraphs shall be set as specified in 7.5.2.5.2.1.

7.5.2.5.2.9.1.2   *Data packet type (DP)*. This field shall be set to 0.

7.5.2.5.2.9.1.3   *MSP packet type (MP)*. This field shall be set to 1.

7.5.2.5.2.9.1.4   *Supervisory packet (SP)*. This field shall be set to 3.

7.5.2.5.2.9.1.5   *Supervisory type (ST)*. This field shall be set to 3.

7.5.2.5.2.9.1.6   *Supervisory subset (SS)*. This field shall be set to 0.

7.5.2.5.2.9.2   *Translation into ISO 8208 packets*. Reception by the XDLP reformatting process of a Mode S INTERRUPT CONFIRMATION packet from the local XDCE shall result in the generation of a corresponding ISO 8208 INTERRUPT CONFIRMATION packet to the local DCE. The translation from the Mode S packet to the ISO 8208 packet shall be the inverse of the processing defined in 7.5.2.5.2.9.1.

7.5.2.5.2.10   *RESET REQUEST*

7.5.2.5.2.10.1   *Translation into Mode S packets*

7.5.2.5.2.10.1.1 *Translated packet format.* Reception by the XDLP reformatting process of an ISO 8208 RESET REQUEST packet from the local DCE shall result in the generation of a corresponding Mode S RESET REQUEST packet as follows:

DP:1	MP:1	SP:2	ST:2	FILL2:0 or 2	FILL:2	SN:6	CH:4	FILL:4	RC:8	DC:8

Fields shown in the packet format and not specified in the following paragraphs shall be set as specified in 7.5.2.5.2.1.

7.5.2.5.2.10.1.2 *Data packet type (DP).* This field shall be set to 0.

7.5.2.5.2.10.1.3 *MSP packet type (MP).* This field shall be set to 1.

7.5.2.5.2.10.1.4 *Supervisory packet (SP).* This field shall be set to 2.

7.5.2.5.2.10.1.5 *Supervisory type (ST).* This field shall be set to 2.

7.5.2.5.2.10.1.6 *Reset cause code (RC) and di agnostic code (DC).* The reset cause and diagnostic codes used in the Mode S RESET REQUEST packet shall be as specified in the ISO 8208 packet when the reset procedure is initiated by the DTE. If the reset procedure originates with the DCE, the DCE state tables shall specify the diagnostic fields coding. In this case, bit 8 of the reset cause field shall be set to 0.

7.5.2.5.2.10.2 *Translation i nto ISO 8208 pac kets.* Reception by the XDLP reformatting process of a Mode S RESET packet from the local XDCE shall result in the generation of a corresponding ISO 8208 RESET packet to the local DCE. The translation from the Mode S packet to the ISO 8208 packet shall be the inverse of the processing defined in 7.5.2.5.2.10.1.

7.5.2.5.2.11 *ISO 8208 RESTART REQUEST to Mode S CLEAR REQUEST.* The receipt of an ISO 8208 RESTART REQUEST from the local DCE shall result in the reformatting process generating a Mode S CLEAR REQUEST by ADLP or Mode S CLEAR REQUEST by GDLP for all SVCs associated with the requesting DTE. The fields of the Mode S CLEAR REQUEST packets shall be set as specified in 7.5.2.5.2.5 and 7.5.2.5.2.6.

Note — There are no restart states in the Mode S packet layer protocol.

7.5.2.5.3 *PACKETS LOCAL TO THE MODE S SUBNETWORK*

Note — Packets defined in this section do not result in the generation of an ISO 8208 packet.

7.5.2.5.3.1 *MODE S RECEIVE READY*

7.5.2.5.3.1.1 *Packet format.* The Mode S RECEIVE READY packet arriving from an XDLP is not related to the control of the DTE/DCE interface and shall not cause the generation of an ISO 8208 packet. The format of the packet shall be as follows:

DP:1	MP:1	SP:2	ST:2	FILL2:0 or 2	FILL:2	SN:6	CH:4	PR:4

Fields shown in the packet format and not specified in the following paragraphs shall be set as specified in 7.5.2.5.2.1. The packet shall be processed as specified in 7.5.2.6.5.

7.5.2.5.3.1.2 *Data packet type (DP).* This field shall be set to 0.

7.5.2.5.3.1.3 *MSP packet type (MP).* This field shall be set to 1.

7.5.2.5.3.1.4 *Supervisory packet (SP).* This field shall be set to 2.

7.5.2.5.3.1.5 *Supervisory type (ST).* This field shall be set to 0.

7.5.2.5.3.1.6 *Packet receive s equence number (PR).* This field shall be set as specified in 7.5.2.6.4.4.

7.5.2.5.3.2 *MODE S RECEIVE NOT READY*

7.5.2.5.3.2.1 *Packet format*. The Mode S RECEIVE NOT READY packet arriving from an XDLP is not related to the control of the DTE/DCE interface and shall not cause the generation of an ISO 8208 packet. The format of the packet shall be as follows:

DP:1	MP:1	SP:2	ST:2	FILL2:0 or 2	FILL:2	SN:6	CH:4	PR:4

Fields shown in the packet format and not specified in the following paragraphs shall be set as specified in 7.5.2.5.2.1. The packet shall be processed as specified in 7.5.2.6.6.

7.5.2.5.3.2.2 *Data packet type (DP)*. This field shall be set to 0.

7.5.2.5.3.2.3 *MSP packet type (MP)*. This field shall be set to 1.

7.5.2.5.3.2.4 *Supervisory packet (SP)*. This field shall be set to 2.

7.5.2.5.3.2.5 *Supervisory type (ST)*. This field shall be set to 1.

7.5.2.5.3.2.6 *Packet receive sequence number (PR)*. This field shall be set as specified in 7.5.2.6.4.4.

7.5.2.5.3.3 *MODE S ROUTE*

7.5.2.5.3.3.1 *Packet format*. The format for the packet shall be as follows:

DP:1	MP:1	SP:2	ST:2	OF:1	IN:1	RTL:8	RT:v	ODL:0 or 8	OD:v

Fields shown in the packet format and not specified in the following paragraphs shall be set as specified in 7.5.2.5.2.1. The packet shall only be generated by the GDLP. It shall be processed by the ADLP as specified in 7.5.2.8.1.2 and shall have a maximum size as specified in 7.5.2.6.4.2.1.

7.5.2.5.3.3.2 *Data packet type (DP)*. This field shall be set to 0.

7.5.2.5.3.3.3 *MSP packet type (MP)*. This field shall be set to 1.

7.5.2.5.3.3.4 *Supervisory packet (SP)*. This field shall be set to 3.

7.5.2.5.3.3.5 *Supervisory type (ST)*. This field shall be set to 0.

7.5.2.5.3.3.6 *Option flag (OF)*. This field shall indicate the presence of the optional data length (ODL) and optional data (OD) fields. OF shall be set to 1 if ODL and OD are present. Otherwise it shall be set to 0.

7.5.2.5.3.3.7 *Initialization bit (IN)*. This field shall indicate the requirement for subnetwork initialization. It shall be set by the GDLP as specified in 7.5.2.8.1.2 d).

Note - Initialization causes the clearing of any open SVCs associated with the DTE addresses contained in the ROUTE packet. This is needed to assure that all channels are closed at acquisition and for initialization following recovery after a GDLP failure.

7.5.2.5.3.3.8 *Route table length (RTL)*. This field shall indicate the size of the route table, expressed in bytes.

7.5.2.5.3.3.9 *Route table (RT)*

7.5.2.5.3.3.9.1 *Contents*. This table shall consist of a variable number of entries each containing information specifying the addition or deletion of entries in the II code-DTE cross-reference table (7.5.2.8.1.1).

7.5.2.5.3.3.9.2 *Entries*. Each entry in the route table shall consist of the II code, a list of up to 8 ground DTE addresses, and a flag indicating whether the resulting II code-DTE pairs shall be added or deleted from the II code-DTE cross-reference table. A route table entry shall be coded as follows:

II:4	AD:1	ND:3	DAL:v

7.5.2.5.3.3.9.3 *Interrogator identifier (II)*. This field shall contain the 4-bit II code.

7.5.2.5.3.3.9.4 *Add/delete flag (AD)*. This field shall indicate whether the II code-DTE pairs shall be added ($AD = 1$) or deleted ($AD = 0$) from the II code-DTE cross-reference table.

7.5.2.5.3.3.9.5 *Number of DTE addresses (ND)*. This field shall be expressed in binary in the range from 0 to 7 and shall indicate the number of DTE addresses present in DAL minus 1 (in order to allow from 1 to 8 DTE addresses).

7.5.2.5.3.3.9.6 *DTE address list (DAL)*. This list shall consist of up to 8 DTE addresses, expressed in 8-bit binary representation.

7.5.2.5.3.3.10 *Optional data length (ODL)*. This field shall contain the length in bytes of the following OD field.

7.5.2.5.3.3.11 *Optional data (OD)*. This variable length field shall contain optional data.

7.5.2.5.3.4 *MODE S CLEAR CONFIRMATION BY ADLP*

7.5.2.5.3.4.1 *Packet format*. The format for this packet shall be as follows:

DP:1	MP:1	SP:2	ST:2	FILL2:0 or 2	TC:2	SN:6	CH:4	AM:4	AG:8

Fields shown in the packet format and not specified in the following paragraphs shall be set as specified in 7.5.2.5.2.1 and 7.5.2.5.2.5. This packet shall be processed as specified in 7.5.2.6.3.

7.5.2.5.3.4.2 *Data packet type (DP)*. This field shall be set to 0.

7.5.2.5.3.4.3 *MSP packet type (MP)*. This field shall be set to 1.

7.5.2.5.3.4.4 *Supervisory packet (SP)*. This field shall be set to 1.

7.5.2.5.3.4.5 *Channel number (CH)*: If a channel number has been allocated during the call acceptance phase, then CH shall be set to that value, otherwise it shall be set to zero.

7.5.2.5.3.4.6 *Temporary channel (TC)*: If a channel number has been allocated during the call acceptance phase, then TC shall be set to zero, otherwise it shall be set to the value used in the CALL REQUEST by GDLP.

7.5.2.5.3.4.7 *Supervisory type (ST)*. This field shall be set to 3.

7.5.2.5.3.5 *MODE S CLEAR CONFIRMATION BY GDLP*

7.5.2.5.3.5.1 *Packet format*. The format for this packet shall be as follows:

DP:1	MP:1	SP:2	ST:2	FILL:2	TC:2	SN:6	CH:4	AM:4	AG:8

Fields shown in the packet format and not specified in the following paragraphs shall be set as specified in 7.5.2.5.2.1 and 7.5.2.5.2.6. This packet shall be processed as specified in 7.5.2.6.3.

7.5.2.5.3.5.2 *Data packet type (DP)*. This field shall be set to 0.

7.5.2.5.3.5.3 *MSP packet type (MP)*. This field shall be set to 1.

7.5.2.5.3.5.4 *Supervisory packet (SP).* This field shall be set to 1.

7.5.2.5.3.5.5 *Channel number (CH)*: If a channel number has been allocated during the call acceptance phase, then CH shall be set to that value, otherwise it shall be set to zero.

7.5.2.5.3.5.6 *Temporary channel (TC)*: If a channel number has been allocated during the call acceptance phase, then TC shall be set to zero, otherwise it shall be set to the value used in the CALL REQUEST by GDLP.

7.5.2.5.3.5.7 Supervisory *type (ST)*. This field shall be set to 3.

7.5.2.5.3.6 *MODE S RESET CONFIRMATION*

7.5.2.5.3.6.1 *Packet format*. The format for this packet shall be as follows:

DP:1	MP:1	SP:2	ST:2	FILL2:0 or 2	FILL:2	SN:6	CH:4	FILL:4

Fields shown in the packet format and not specified in the following paragraphs shall be set as specified in 7.5.2.5.2.1. This packet shall be processed as specified in Table 7.5-14.

7.5.2.5.3.6.2 *Data packet type (DP)*. This field shall be set to 0.

7.5.2.5.3.6.3 *MSP packet type (MP)*. This field shall be set to 1.

7.5.2.5.3.6.4 *Supervisory packet (SP)*. This field shall be set to 2.

7.5.2.5.3.6.5 *Supervisory type (ST)*. This field shall be set to 3.

7.5.2.5.3.7 *MODE S REJECT*

7.5.2.5.3.7.1 *Packet format.* The format for this packet shall be as follows:

DP:1	MP:1	SP:2	ST:2	SS:2	FILL2:0 or 2	SN:6	CH:4	PR:4

Fields shown in the packet format and not specified in the following paragraphs shall be set as specified in 7.5.2.5.2.1. This packet shall be processed as specified in 7.5.2.6.8.

7.5.2.5.3.7.2 *Data packet type (DP)*. This field shall be set to 0.

7.5.2.5.3.7.3 *MSP packet type (MP)*. This field shall be set to 1.

7.5.2.5.3.7.4 *Supervisory packet (SP)*. This field shall be set to 3.

7.5.2.5.3.7.5 *Supervisory type (ST)*. This field shall be set to 3.

7.5.2.5.3.7.6 *Supervisory subset (SS)*. This field shall be set to 1.

7.5.2.5.3.7.7 Packet *receive sequence number (PR)*. This field shall be set as specified in 7.5.2.6.4.4.

7.5.2.6 XDCE operation

Note — The ADCE process within the ADLP acts as a peer process to the GDCE process in the GDLP.

7.5.2.6.1 State transitions. The XDCE shall operate as a state machine. Upon entering a state, the XDCE shall perform the actions specified in Table 7.5-14. State transition and additional action(s) shall be as specified in Tables 7.5-15 through 7.5-22.

Note 1 — The next state transition (if any) that occurs when the XDCE receives a packet from the peer XDCE is specified by Tables 7.5-15 through 7.5-19. The same transitions are defined

in Tables 7.5-20 through 7.5-22 when the XDCE receives a packet from the DCE (via the reformatting process).

Note 2 — The XDCE state hierarchy is the same as for the DCE as presented in Figure 7.5-2, except that states r2, r3 and p5 are omitted.

7.5.2.6.2 DISPOSITION OF PACKETS

7.5.2.6.2.1 Upon receipt of a packet from the peer XDCE, the packet shall be forwarded or not forwarded to the DCE (via the reformatting process) according to the parenthetical instructions contained in Tables 7.5-15 to 7.5-19. If no parenthetical instruction is listed or if the parenthetical instruction indicates "do not forward" the packet shall be discarded.

7.5.2.6.2.2 Upon receipt of a packet from the DCE (via the reformatting process), the packet shall be forwarded or not forwarded to the peer XDCE according to the parenthetical instructions contained in Tables 7.5-20 to 7.5-22. If no parenthetical instruction is listed or if the parenthetical instruction indicates "do not forward" the packet shall be discarded.

7.5.2.6.3 SVC CALL SETUP AND CLEAR PROCEDURE

7.5.2.6.3.1 *Setup procedures.* Upon receipt of a CALL REQUEST from the DCE or peer XDCE, the XDLP shall determine if sufficient resources exist to operate the SVC. This shall include: sufficient buffer space (refer to 7.5.2.5.1.1 for buffer requirements) and an available p1 state SVC. Upon acceptance of the CALL REQUEST from the DCE (via the reformatting process), the Mode S CALL REQUEST packet shall be forwarded to frame processing. Upon acceptance of a Mode S CALL REQUEST from the peer XDCE (via frame processing), the Mode S CALL REQUEST shall be sent to the reformatting process.

7.5.2.6.3.2 *Aborting a call request.* If the DTE and/or the peer XDCE abort a call before they have received a CALL ACCEPT packet, they shall indicate this condition by issuing a CLEAR REQUEST packet. Procedures for handling these cases shall be as specified in Table 7.5-16 and Table 7.5-20.

7.5.2.6.3.3 *VIRTUAL CALL CLEARING*

7.5.2.6.3.3.1 If the XDCE receives a Mode S CALL REQUEST from the reformatting process that it cannot support, it shall initiate a Mode S CLEAR REQUEST packet that is sent to the DCE (via the reformatting process) for transfer to the DTE (the DCE thus enters the DCE CLEAR REQUEST to DTE state, *p*7).

7.5.2.6.3.3.2 If the XDCE receives a Mode S CALL REQUEST packet from the peer XDCE (via frame processing) which it cannot support, it shall enter the state *p*7.

7.5.2.6.3.3.3 A means shall be provided to advise the DTE whether an SVC has been cleared due to the action of the peer DTE or due to a problem within the subnetwork itself.

7.5.2.6.3.3.4 The requirement of 7.5.2.6.3.3.3 shall be satisfied by setting bit 8 of the cause field to 1 to indicate that the problem originated in the Mode S subnetwork and not in the DTE. The diagnostic and cause codes shall be set as follows:

  a) no channel number available, DC = 71, CC = 133;
  b) buffer space not available, DC = 71, CC = 133;
  c) DTE not operational, DC = 162, CC = 141; and
  d) link failure, DC = 225, CC = 137.

7.5.2.6.3.3.5 If the ADLP receives a Mode S ROUTE packet with the IN bit set to ONE, the ADLP shall perform local initialization by clearing Mode S SVCs associated with the DTE addresses contained in the ROUTE packet. If the GDLP receives a search request (see Table

7.5-23) from an ADLP, the GDLP shall perform local initialization by clearing Mode S SVCs associated with that ADLP. Local initialization shall be accomplished by:

a) releasing all allocated resources associated with these SVCs (including the resequencing buffers);

b) returning these SVCs to the ADCE ready state (*p*1); and

c) sending Mode S CLEAR REQUEST packets for these SVCs to the DCE (via the reformatting process) for transfer to the DTE.

Note - This action will allow all ISO 8208 SVCs attached to the Mode S SVCs to be cleared and return to their ready states (p1).

7.5.2.6.3.4 *Clear co nfirmation*. When the XDCE receives a Mode S CLEAR CONFIRMATION packet, the remaining allocated resources to manage the SVC shall be released (including the resequencing buffers) and the SVC shall be returned to the *p*1 state. Mode S CLEAR CONFIRMATION packets shall not be transferred to the reformatting process.

7.5.2.6.3.5 *Clear collision*. A clear collision occurs at the XDCE when it receives a Mode S CLEAR REQUEST packet from the DCE (via the reformatting process) and then receives a Mode S CLEAR REQUEST packet from the peer XDCE (or vice versa). In this event, the XDCE does not expect to receive a Mode S CLEAR CONFIRMATION packet for this SVC and shall consider the clearing complete.

7.5.2.6.3.6 *Packet processing*. The XDCE shall treat an S-bit sequence of Mode S CALL REQUEST, CALL ACCEPT and CLEAR REQUEST packets as a single entity.

7.5.2.6.4 DATA TRANSFER AND INTERRUPT PROCEDURES

7.5.2.6.4.1 *GENERAL PROVISIONS*

7.5.2.6.4.1.1 Data transfer and interrupt procedures shall apply independently to each SVC. The contents of the user data field shall be passed transparently to the DCE or to the peer XDCE. Data shall be transferred in the order dictated by the sequence numbers assigned to the data packets.

7.5.2.6.4.1.2 To transfer DATA packets, the SVC shall be in a FLOW CONTROL READY state (*d*1).

7.5.2.6.4.2 *MODE S PACKET SIZE*

7.5.2.6.4.2.1 The maximum size of Mode S packets shall be 152 bytes in the uplink direction and 160 bytes in the downlink direction for installations that have full uplink and downlink ELM capability. The maximum downlink packet size for level four transponders with less than 16 segment downlink ELM capability shall be 10 bytes times the maximum number of downlink ELM segments that the transponder specifies in its data link capability report. If there is no ELM capability, the maximum Mode S packet size shall be 28 bytes.

7.5.2.6.4.2.2 The Mode S subnetwork shall allow packets of less than the maximum size to be transferred.

7.5.2.6.4.3 *FLOW CONTROL WINDOW SIZE*

7.5.2.6.4.3.1 The flow control window size of the Mode S subnetwork shall be independent of that used on the DTE/DCE interface. The Mode S subnetwork window size shall be 15 packets in the uplink and downlink directions.

7.5.2.6.4.4 *SVC FLOW CONTROL*

7.5.2.6.4.4.1   Flow control shall be managed by means of a sequence number for received packets (PR) and one for packets that have been sent (PS). A sequence number (PS) shall be assigned for each Mode S DATA packet generated by the XDLP for each SVC. The first Mode S DATA packet transferred by the XDCE to frame processing when the SVC has just entered the flow control ready state shall be numbered zero. The first Mode S packet received from the peer XDCE after an SVC has just entered the flow control ready state shall be numbered zero. Subsequent packets shall be numbered consecutively.

7.5.2.6.4.4.2   A source of Mode S DATA packets (the ADCE or GDCE) shall not send (without permission from the receiver) more Mode S DATA packets than would fill the flow control window. The receiver shall give explicit permission to send more packets.

7.5.2.6.4.4.3   The permission information shall be in the form of the next expected packet sequence number and shall be denoted PR. If a receiver wishes to update the window and it has data to transmit to the sender, a Mode S DATA packet shall be used for information transfer. If the window must be updated and no data are to be sent, a Mode S RECEIVE READY (RR) or Mode S RECEIVE NOT READY (RNR) packet shall be sent. At this point, the "sliding window" shall be moved to begin at the new PR value. The XDCE shall now be authorized to transfer more packets without acknowledgement up to the window limit.

7.5.2.6.4.4.4   When the sequence number (PS) of the next Mode S DATA packet to be sent is in the range $PR \leq PS \leq PR + 14$ (modulo 16), the sequence number shall be defined to be "in the window" and the XDCE shall be authorized to transmit the packet. Otherwise, the sequence number (PS) of the packet shall be defined to be "outside the window" and the XDCE shall not transmit the packet to the peer XDCE.

7.5.2.6.4.4.5   When the sequence number (PS) of the packet received is next in sequence and within the window, the XDCE shall accept this packet. Receipt of a packet with a PS:

   a) outside the window; or
   b) out of sequence; or
   c) not equal to 0 for the first data packet after entering FLOW CONTROL READY state (d1); shall be considered an error (7.5.2.6.8).

7.5.2.6.4.4.6   The receipt of a Mode S DATA packet with a valid PS number (i.e. the next PS in sequence) shall cause the lower window PR to be changed to that PS value plus 1. The packet receive sequence number (PR) shall be conveyed to the originating XDLP by a Mode S DATA, RECEIVE READY, RECEIVE NOT READY, or REJECT packet. A valid PR value shall be transmitted by the XDCE to the peer XDCE after the receipt of 8 packets provided that sufficient buffer space exists to store 15 packets. Incrementing the PR and PS fields shall be performed using modulo 16 arithmetic.

Note — The l oss o f a p acket w hich co ntains t he PR value m ay ca use the AD LP/GDLP operations for that SVC to cease.

7.5.2.6.4.4.7   A copy of a packet shall be retained until the user data has been successfully transferred. Following successful transfer, the PS value shall be updated.

7.5.2.6.4.4.8   The PR value for user data shall be updated as soon as the required buffer space for the window (as determined by flow control management) is available within the DCE.

7.5.2.6.4.4.9   Flow control management shall be provided between the DCE and XDCE.

7.5.2.6.4.5 *INTERRUPT PROCEDURES FOR SWITCHED VIRTUAL CIRCUITS*

7.5.2.6.4.5.1   If user data is to be sent via the Mode S subnetwork without following the flow control procedures, the interrupt procedures shall be used. The interrupt procedure shall have

no effect on the normal data packet and flow control procedures. An interrupt packet shall be delivered to the DTE (or the transponder or interrogator interface) at or before the point in the stream of data at which the interrupt was generated. The processing of a Mode S INTERRUPT packet shall occur as soon as it is received by the XDCE.

Note — The use of clear, reset, and restart procedures can cause interrupt data to be lost.

7.5.2.6.4.5.2 The XDCE shall treat an S-bit sequence of Mode S INTERRUPT packets as a single entity.

7.5.2.6.4.5.3 Interrupt processing shall have precedence over any other processing for the SVC occurring at the time of the interrupt.

7.5.2.6.4.5.4 The reception of a Mode S INTERRUPT packet before the previous interrupt of the SVC has been confirmed (by the receipt of a Mode S INTERRUPT CONFIRMATION packet) shall be defined as an error. The error results in a reset (see Table 7.5-18 at the end of Chapter 7.5).

7.5.2.6.5 RECEIVE READY PROCEDURE

7.5.2.6.5.1 The Mode S RECEIVE READY packet shall be sent if no Mode S DATA packets (that normally contain the updated PR value) are available for transmittal and it is necessary to transfer the latest PR value. It also shall be sent to terminate a receiver not ready condition.

7.5.2.6.5.2 Receipt of the Mode S RECEIVE READY packet by the XDCE shall cause the XDCE to update its value of PR for the outgoing SVC. It shall not be taken as a demand for retransmission of packets that have already been transmitted and are still in the window.

7.5.2.6.5.3 Upon receipt of the Mode S RECEIVE READY packet, the XDCE shall go into the ADLP(GDLP) RECEIVE READY state (*g1*).

7.5.2.6.6 RECEIVE NOT READY PROCEDURE

7.5.2.6.6.1 The Mode S RECEIVE NOT READY packet shall be used to indicate a temporary inability to accept additional DATA packets for the given SVC. The Mode S RNR condition shall be cleared by the receipt of a Mode S RR packet or a Mode S REJECT packet.

7.5.2.6.6.2 When the XDCE receives a Mode S RECEIVE NOT READY packet from the peer XDCE, it shall update its value of PR for the SVC and stop transmitting Mode S DATA packets on the SVC to the XDLP. The XDCE shall go into the ADLP(GDLP) RECEIVE NOT READY state (*g2*).

7.5.2.6.6.3 The XDCE shall transmit a Mode S RECEIVE NOT READY packet to the peer XDCE if it is unable to receive from the peer XDCE any more Mode S DATA packets on the indicated SVC. Under these conditions, the XDCE shall go into the ADCE(GDCE) RECEIVE NOT READY state (*f2*).

7.5.2.6.7 RESET PROCEDURE

7.5.2.6.7.1 When the XDCE receives a Mode S RESET REQUEST packet from either the peer XDCE or the DCE (via the reformatting process) or due to an error condition performs its own reset, the following actions shall be taken:

   a) those Mode S DATA packets that have been transmitted to the peer XDCE shall be removed from the window;
   b) those Mode S DATA packets that are not transmitted to the peer XDCE but are contained in an M-bit sequence for which some packets have been transmitted shall be deleted from the queue of DATA packets awaiting transmission;

c) those Mode S DATA packets received from the peer XDCE that are part of an incomplete M-bit sequence shall be discarded;

d) the lower window edge shall be set to 0 and the next packet sent shall have a sequence number (PS) of 0;

e) any outstanding Mode S INTERRUPT packets to or from the peer XDCE shall be left unconfirmed;

f) any Mode S INTERRUPT packet awaiting transfer shall be discarded;

g) data packets awaiting transfer shall not be discarded (unless they are part of a partially transferred M-bit sequence); and

h) the transition to $d1$ shall also include a transition to $i1$, $j1$, $f1$ and $g1$.

7.5.2.6.7.2 The reset procedure shall apply to the DATA TRANSFER state ($p4$). The error procedure in Table 7.5-16 shall be followed. In any other state the reset procedure shall be abandoned.

7.5.2.6.8 REJECT PROCEDURE

7.5.2.6.8.1 When the XDCE receives a Mode S DATA packet from the peer XDCE with incorrect format or whose packet sequence number (PS) is not within the defined window (see Table 7.5-19 at the end) or is out of sequence, it shall discard the received packet and send a Mode S REJECT packet to the peer XDCE via frame processing. The Mode S REJECT packet shall indicate a value of PR for which retransmission of the Mode S DATA packets is to begin. The XDCE shall discard subsequent out-of-sequence Mode S DATA packets whose receipt occurs while the Mode S REJECT packet response is still outstanding.

7.5.2.6.8.2 When the XDCE receives a Mode S REJECT packet from the peer XDCE, it shall update its lower window value with the new value of PR and begin to (re)transmit packets with a sequence number of PR.

7.5.2.6.8.3 Reject indications shall not be transferred to the DCE. If the ISO 8208 interface supports the reject procedures, the reject indications occurring on the ISO 8208 interface shall not be transferred between the DCE and the XDCE.

7.5.2.6.9 PACKET RESEQUENCING AND DUPLICATE SUPPRESSION

Note 1 - If the frames for an SVC include both types (SLM and ELM), the sequence of packets may b e lost d ue t o t he d ifferent d elivery t imes. T he o rder m ay a lso b e l ost if m ultiple interrogators are used to deliver frames for the same SVC to a given XDLP. The following procedure will correct for a limited amount of desequencing.

Note 2 - This process serves as an interface between frame processing and the XDCE function.

7.5.2.6.9.1 *Resequencing*. Resequencing shall be performed independently for the uplink and downlink transfers of each Mode S SVC. The following variables and parameters shall be used:

SNRA 6-bit variable indicating the sequence number of a received packet on a specific SVC. It is contained in the SN field of the packet (7.5.2.5.2.1.1.7).

NESN The next expected sequence number following a series of consecutive sequence numbers.

HSNR The highest value of SNR in the resequencing window.

Tq Resequencing timers (see Tables 7.5-1 and 7.5-13) associated with a specific SVC.

All operations involving the sequence number (SN) shall be performed modulo 64.

7.5.2.6.9.2 *Duplication window*. The range of SNR values between NESN - 32 and NESN - 1 inclusive shall be denoted the duplication window.

7.5.2.6.9.3 *Resequencing window*. The range of SNR values between NESN + 1 and NESN + 31 inclusive shall be denoted the resequencing window. Received packets with a sequence number value in this range shall be stored in the resequencing window in sequence number order.

7.5.2.6.9.4 *TRANSMISSION FUNCTIONS*

7.5.2.6.9.4.1 For each SVC, the first packet sent to establish a connection (the first Mode S CALL REQUEST or first Mode S CALL ACCEPT packet) shall cause the value of the SN field to be initialized to zero. The value of the SN field shall be incremented after the transmission (or retransmission) of each packet.

7.5.2.6.9.4.2 The maximum number of unacknowledged sequence numbers shall be 32 consecutive SN numbers. Should this condition be reached, then it shall be treated as an error and the channel cleared.

Note - A limit on the number of unacknowledged packets is required since the SN field is six bits long and therefore has a maximum of 64 different values before the values repeat.

7.5.2.6.9.5 *RECEIVE FUNCTIONS*

7.5.2.6.9.5.1 *Resequencing*. The resequencing algorithm shall maintain the variables HSNR and NESN for each SVC. NESN shall be initialized to 0 for all SVCs and shall be reset to 0 when the SVC re-enters the channel number pool (7.5.2.5.1.2).

7.5.2.6.9.5.2 *Processing of packets within the duplication window*. If a packet is received with a sequence number value within the duplication window, the packet shall be discarded.

7.5.2.6.9.5.3 *Processing of packets within the resequencing window*. If a packet is received with a sequence number within the resequencing window, it shall be discarded as a duplicate if a packet with the same sequence number has already been received and stored in the resequencing window. Otherwise, the packet shall be stored in the resequencing window. Then, if no Tq timers are running, HSNR shall be set to the value of SNR for this packet and a Tq timer shall be started with its initial value (see Tables 7.5-1 and 7.5-13). If at least one Tq timer is running, and SNR is not in the window between NESN and HSNR + 1 inclusive, a new Tq timer shall be started and the value of HSNR shall be updated. If at least one Tq timer is running, and SNR for this packet is equal to HSNR + 1, the value of HSNR shall be updated.

7.5.2.6.9.5.4 *Release of packets to the XDCE*. If a packet is received with a sequence number equal to NESN, the following procedure shall be applied:

   a)   the packet and any packets already stored in the resequencing window up to the next missing sequence number shall be passed to the XDCE;
   b)   *NESN* shall be set to 1 + the value of the sequence number of the last packet passed to the XDCE;
         and
   c)   the *Tq* timer associated with any of the released packets shall be stopped.

7.5.2.6.9.6 *Tq timer expiration*. If a *Tq* timer expires, the following procedure shall be applied:

   a) *NESN* shall be incremented until the next missing sequence number is detected after that of the packet associated with the *Tq* timer that has expired;
   b) any stored packets with sequence numbers that are no longer in the resequencing window shall be forwarded to the XDCE except that an incomplete S-bit sequence shall be discarded; and
   c) the *Tq* timer associated with any released packets shall be stopped.

7.5.2.7 Mode S specific services processing

Mode S specific services shall be processed by an entity in the XDLP termed the Mode S specific services entity (SSE). Transponder registers shall be used to convey the information specified in Table 7.5-24 at the end of this Chapter. The data structuring of the registers in Table 7.5-24 shall be implemented in such a way that interoperability is ensured.

Note 1 - The data formats and protocols for messages transferred via Mode S specific services are specified in the Technical Provisions for Mode S Services and Extended Squitter (Doc 9871) (in preparation).

Note 2 - Uniform implementation of the data formats and protocols for messages transferred via Mode S specific services will ensure interoperability.

Note 3 - This section describes the processing of control and message data received from the Mode S specific services interface.

Note 4. - Control data consists of information permitting the determination of, for example, message length, BDS code used to access the data format for a particular register, and aircraft address.

7.5.2.7.1 ADLP PROCESSING

7.5.2.7.1.1 *DOWNLINK PROCESSING*

7.5.2.7.1.1.1 *Specific services capability*. The ADLP shall be capable of receiving control and message data from the Mode S specific services interface(s) and sending delivery notices to this interface. The control data shall be processed to determine the protocol type and the length of the message data. When the message or control data provided at this interface are erroneous (i.e. incomplete, invalid or inconsistent), the ADLP shall discard the message and deliver an error report at the interface.

Note - The diagnostic content and error reporting mechanism are a local issue.

7.5.2.7.1.1.2 *Broadcast processing*. The control and message data shall be used to format the Comm-B broadcast message as specified in 7.5.2.7.5 and transferred to the transponder.

7.5.2.7.1.1.3 *GICB processing*. The 8-bit BDS code shall be determined from the control data. The 7-byte register content shall be extracted from the received message data. The register content shall be transferred to the transponder, along with an indication of the specified register number. A request to address one of the air-initiated Comm-B registers or the airborne collision avoidance system (ACAS) active resolution advisories register shall be discarded. The assignment of registers shall be as specified in Table 7.5-24.

Note - Provision of the data available in transponder registers 40, 50 and 60 {HEX} has been mandated in some ICAO Regions in support of ATM applications.

7.5.2.7.1.1.4 *MSP processing*

7.5.2.7.1.1.4.1 The MSP message length, channel number (M/CH) (7.5.2.7.3.1.3) and optionally the interrogator identifier (II) code shall be determined from the control data. The MSP message content shall be extracted from the received message data. If the message length is 26 bytes or less, the SSE shall format an air-initiated Comm-B message (7.5.2.7.1.1.4.2) for transfer to the transponder using the short form MSP packet (7.5.2.7.3.1). If the message length is 27 to 159 bytes and the transponder has adequate downlink ELM capability, the SSE shall format an ELM message for transfer using the short form MSP packet. If the message length is 27 to 159 bytes and the transponder has a limited downlink ELM capability, the SSE shall format multiple long form MSP packets (7.5.2.7.3.2) using ELM messages, as required

utilizing the L-bit and M/SN fields for association of the packets. If the message length is 27 to 159 bytes and the transponder does not have downlink ELM capability, the SSE shall format multiple long form MSP packets (7.5.2.7.3.2) using air initiated Comm-B messages, as required utilizing the L-bit and M/SN fields for association of the packets. Different frame types shall never be used in the delivery of an MSP message. Messages longer than 159 bytes shall be discarded. The assignment of downlink MSP channel numbers shall be as specified in Table 7.5-25.

7.5.2.7.1.1.4.2   For an MSP, a request to send a packet shall cause the packet to be multisite-directed to the interrogator which II code is specified in control data. If no II code is specified, the packet shall be downlinked using the air-initiated protocol. A message delivery notice for this packet shall be provided to the Mode S specific interface when the corresponding close-out(s) have been received from the transponder. If a close-out has not been received from the transponder in *Tz* seconds, as specified in Table 7.5-1, the MSP packet shall be discarded. This shall include the cancellation in the transponder of any frames associated with this packet. A delivery failure notice for this message shall be provided to the Mode S specific services interface.

7.5.2.7.1.2   *UPLINK PROCESSING*

Note — This section describes the processing of Mode S specific services messages received from the transponder.

7.5.2.7.1.2.1   *Specific services capability*. The ADLP shall be capable of receiving Mode S specific services messages from the transponder via frame processing. The ADLP shall be capable of delivering the messages and the associated control data at the specific services interface. When the resources allocated at this interface are insufficient to accommodate the output data, the ADLP shall discard the message and deliver an error report at this interface.

Note - The diagnostic content and the error reporting mechanism are a local issue.

7.5.2.7.1.2.2   *Broadcast processing*. If the received message is a broadcast Comm-A, as indicated by control data received over the transponder/ADLP interface, the broadcast ID and user data (7.5.2.7.5) shall be forwarded to the Mode S specific services interface (7.5.2.3.2.1) along with the control data that identifies this as a broadcast message. The assignment of uplink broadcast identifier numbers shall be as specified in Table 7.5-23.

7.5.2.7.1.2.3   *MSP processing*. If the received message is an MSP, as indicated by the packet format header (7.5.2.7.3), the user data field of the received MSP packet shall be forwarded to the Mode S specific services interface (7.5.2.3.2.1) together with the MSP channel number (M/CH), the IIS subfield (7.5.2.2.1.1.1) together with control data that identifies this as an MSP message. L-bit processing shall be performed as specified in 7.5.2.7.4. The assignment of uplink MSP channel numbers shall be as specified in Table 7.5-25.

7.5.2.7.2   GDLP PROCESSING

7.5.2.7.2.1 *UPLINK PROCESSING*

7.5.2.7.2.1.1   *Specific services capability*. The GDLP shall be capable of receiving control and message data from the Mode S specific services interface(s) (7.5.2.3.2.2) and sending delivery notices to the interface(s). The control data shall be processed to determine the protocol type and the length of the message data.

7.5.2.7.2.1.2   *Broadcast processing*. The GDLP shall determine the interrogator(s), broadcast azimuths and scan times from the control data and format the broadcast message for transfer to the interrogator(s) as specified in 7.5.2.7.5.

7.5.2.7.2.1.3 *GICB processing.* The GDLP shall determine the register number and the aircraft address from the control data. The aircraft address and BDS code shall be passed to the interrogator as a request for a ground-initiated Comm-B.

7.5.2.7.2.1.4 *MSP processing.* The GDLP shall extract from the control data the message length, the MSP channel number (M/CH) and the aircraft address, and obtain the message content from the message data. If the message length is 27 bytes or less, the SSE shall format a Comm-A message for transfer to the interrogator using the short form MSP packet (7.5.2.7.3.1). If the message length is 28 to 151 bytes and the transponder has uplink ELM capability, the SSE shall format an ELM message for transfer to the interrogator using the short form MSP packet. If the message length is 28 to 151 bytes and the transponder does not have uplink ELM capability, the SSE shall format multiple long form MSP packets (7.5.2.7.3.2) utilizing the L-bit and the M/SN fields for association of the packets. Messages longer than 151 bytes shall be discarded. The interrogator shall provide a delivery notice to the Mode S specific services interface(s) indicating successful or unsuccessful delivery, for each uplinked packet.

7.5.2.7.2.2 *DOWNLINK PROCESSING*

7.5.2.7.2.2.1 *Specific services capability.* The GDLP shall be capable of receiving Mode S specific services messages from the interrogator via frame processing.

7.5.2.7.2.2.2 *Broadcast processing.* If the received message is a broadcast Comm-B, as indicated by the interrogator/GDLP interface, the GDLP shall:

a) generate control data indicating the presence of a broadcast message and the 24-bit address of the aircraft from which the message was received;

b) append the 7-byte MB field of the broadcast Comm-B; and

c) forward this data to the Mode S specific services interface(s) (7.5.2.3.2.2).

7.5.2.7.2.2.3 GICB *processing.* If the received message is a GICB, as indicated by the interrogator/GDLP interface, the GDLP shall:

a) generate control data indicating the presence of a GICB message, the register number and the 24-bit address of the aircraft from which the message was received;

b) append the 7-byte MB field of the GICB; and

c) forward this data to the Mode S specific services interface(s) (7.5.2.3.2.2).

7.5.2.7.2.2.4 *MSP processing.* If the received message is an MSP as indicated by the packet format header (7.5.2.7.3), the GDLP shall:

a) generate control data indicating the transfer of an MSP, the length of the message, the MSP channel number (M/CH) and the 24-bit address of the aircraft from which the message was received;

b) append the user data field of the received MSP packet; and

c) forward this data to the Mode S specific services interface(s) (7.5.2.3.2.2). L-bit processing shall be performed as specified in 7.5.2.7.4.

7.5.2.7.3 MSP PACKET FORMATS

7.5.2.7.3.1 *Short form MSP packet.* The format for this packet shall be as follows:

DP:1	MP:1	M/CH:6	FILL1:0 or 6	UD:v

7.5.2.7.3.1.1 *Data packet type (DP).* This field shall be set to 0.

7.5.2.7.3.1.2 *MSP packet type (MP).* This field shall be set to 0.

7.5.2.7.3.1.3 *MSP channel number (M/CH)*. The field shall be set to the channel number derived from the SSE control data.

7.5.2.7.3.1.4 *Fill field (FILL1:0 or 6)*. The fill length shall be 6 bits for a downlink SLM frame. Otherwise the fill length shall be 0.

7.5.2.7.3.1.5 *User data (UD)*. The user data field shall contain message data received from the Mode S specific services interface (7.5.2.3.2.2).

7.5.2.7.3.2 *Long form MSP packet*. The format for this packet shall be as follows:

DP:1	MP:1	SP:2	L:1	M/SN:3	FILL2:0 or 2	M/CH:6	UD:v

Fields shown in the packet format and not specified in the following paragraphs shall be set as specified in 7.5.2.5.2.1 and 7.5.2.7.3.1.

7.5.2.7.3.3 *Data packet type (DP)*. This field shall be set to 0.

7.5.2.7.3.3.1 *MSP packet type (MP)*. This field shall be set to 1.

7.5.2.7.3.3.2 *Supervisory packet (SP)*. This field shall be set to 0.

7.5.2.7.3.3.3 *L field (L)*. A value of 1 shall indicate that the packet is part of an L-bit sequence with more packets in the sequence to follow. A value of 0 shall indicate that the sequence ends with this packet.

7.5.2.7.3.3.4 *MSP sequence number field (M/SN)*. This field shall be used to detect duplication in the delivery of L-bit sequences. The first packet in an L-bit sequence shall be assigned a sequence number of 0. Subsequent packets shall be numbered sequentially. A packet received with the same sequence number as the previously received packet shall be discarded.

7.5.2.7.4 *L-bit processing*. L-bit processing shall be performed only on the long form MSP packet and shall be performed as specified for M-bit processing (7.5.2.5.1.4.1) except as specified in the following paragraphs.

7.5.2.7.4.1 Upon receipt of a long form MSP packet, the XDLP shall construct the user data field by:

   a) verifying that the packet order is correct using the M/SN field (7.5.2.7.3.2);
   b) assuming that the user data field in the MSP packet is the largest number of integral bytes that is contained within the frame;
   c) associating each user data field in an MSP packet received with a previous user data field in an MSP packet that has an L-bit value of 1; and

Note - Truncation of the user data field is not permitted as this is treated as an error condition.

   d) if an error is detected in the processing of an MSP packet, the packet shall be discarded.

7.5.2.7.4.2 In the processing of an L-bit sequence, the XDLP shall discard any MSP packets that have duplicate M/SN values. The XDLP shall discard the entire L-bit sequence if a long form MSP packet is determined to be missing by use of the M/SN field.

7.5.2.7.4.3 The packets associated with any L-bit sequence whose reassembly is not completed in Tm seconds (see Tables 7.5-1 and 7.5-13) shall be discarded.

7.5.2.7.5 BROADCAST FORMAT

7.5.2.7.5.1 *Uplink broadcast*. The format of the broadcast Comm-A shall be as follows: The 83-bit uplink broadcast shall be inserted in an uplink Comm-A frame. The MA field of the Comm-A frame shall contain the broadcast identifier specified in Table 7.5-23 in the first 8

bits, followed by the first 48 user data bits of the broadcast message. The last 27 user data bits of the broadcast message shall be placed in the 27 bits immediately following the UF field of the Comm-A frame.

7.5.2.7.5.2 *Downlink broadcast*. The format of broadcast Comm-B shall be as follows: The 56-bit downlink broadcast message shall be inserted in the MB field of the broadcast Comm-B. The MB field shall contain the broadcast identifier specified in Table 7.5-23 in the first 8 bits, followed by the 48 user data bits.

7.5.2.8   Mode S subnetwork management

7.5.2.8.1   INTERROGATOR LINK DETERMINATION FUNCTION

Note. - The ADLP interrogator link determination function selects the II code of the Mode S interrogator t hrough whi ch a Mode S subnetwork pac ket m ay b e r outed to t he de sired destination ground DTE.

7.5.2.8.1.1 *II code-DTE address correlation*. The ADLP shall construct and manage a Mode S interrogator-data terminal equipment (DTE) cross-reference table whose entries are Mode S interrogator identifier (II) codes and ground DTE addresses associated with the ground ATN routers or other ground DTEs. Each entry of the II code-DTE cross-reference table shall consist of the 4-bit Mode S II code and the 8-bit binary representation of the ground DTE.

Note 1 - Due to the requirement for non-ambiguous addresses, a D TE address also uniquely identifies a GDLP.

Note 2 - An ATN router may have more than one ground DTE address.

7.5.2.8.1.2   *Protocol*. The following procedures shall be used:

a)   when the GDLP initially detects the presence of an aircraft, or detects contact with a currently acquired aircraft through an interrogator with a new II code, the appropriate fields of the DATA LINK CAPABILITY report shall be examined to determine if, and to what level, the aircraft has the capability to participate in a data exchange. After positive determination of data link capability, the GDLP shall uplink one or more Mode S ROUTE packets as specified in 7.5.2.5.3.3. This information shall relate the Mode S II code with the ground DTE addresses accessible through that interrogator. The ADLP shall update the II code-DTE cross-reference table and then discard the Mode S ROUTE packet(s);

b)   a II code-DTE cross-reference table entry shall be deleted when commanded by a Mode S ROUTE packet or when the ADLP recognizes that the transponder has not been selectively interrogated by a Mode S interrogator with a given II code for *Ts* seconds by monitoring the IIS subfield in Mode S surveillance or Comm-A interrogations (see Table 7.5-1);

c) when the GDLP determines that modification is required to the Mode S interrogator assignment, it shall transfer one or more Mode S ROUTE packets to the ADLP. The update information contained in the Mode S ROUTE packet shall be used by the ADLP to modify its cross-reference table. Additions shall be processed before deletions;

d)   when the GDLP sends the initial ROUTE packet after acquisition of a Mode S data link-equipped aircraft, the IN bit shall be set to ONE. This value shall cause the ADLP to perform the procedures as specified in 7.5.2.6.3.3.3. Otherwise, the IN bit shall be set to ZERO;

e)   when the ADLP is initialized (e.g. after a power-up procedure), the ADLP shall issue a search request by sending a broadcast Comm-B message with broadcast identifier equal to 255 (FF$_{16}$, as specified in Table 7.5-23) and the remaining 6 bytes unused. On receipt of a search request, a GDLP shall respond with one or more Mode S ROUTE packets, clear all SVCs

associated with the ADLP, as specified in 7.5.2.6.3.3, and discard he search request. This shall cause the ADLP to initialize the II code-DTE cross-reference table; and

f) on receipt of an update request (Table 7.5-23), a GDLP shall respond with one or more Mode S ROUTE packets and discard the update request. This shall cause the ADLP to update the II code-DTE cross-reference table.

Note - The update request may be used by the ADLP under exceptional circumstances (e.g. changeover to standby unit) to verify the contents of its II code-DTE cross-reference table.

7.5.2.8.1.3 *PROCEDURES FOR DOWNLINKING MODE S PACKETS*

7.5.2.8.1.3.1 When the ADLP has a packet to downlink, the following procedures shall apply:

a) *CALL REQUEST packet.* If the packet to be transferred is a Mode S CALL REQUEST, the ground DTE address field shall be examined and shall be associated with a connected Mode S interrogator using the II code-DTE cross-reference table. The packet shall be downlinked using the multisite-directed protocol. A request to transfer a packet to a DTE address not in the cross-reference table shall result in the action specified in 7.5.2.6.3.3.1.

b) *Other SVC packets.* For an SVC, a request to send a packet to a ground DTE shall cause the packet to be multisite-directed to the last Mode S interrogator used to successfully transfer (uplink or downlink) a packet to that DTE, provided that this Mode S interrogator is currently in the II code-DTE cross-reference table. Otherwise, an SVC packet shall be downlinked using the multisite-directed protocol to any other Mode S interrogator associated with the specified ground DTE address.

Level 5 transponders shall be permitted to use additional interrogators for downlink transfer as indicated in the II code-DTE cross-reference table.

7.5.2.8.1.3.2 A downlink frame transfer shall be defined to be successful if its Comm-B or ELM close-out is received from the transponder within *Tz* seconds as specified in Table 7.5-1. If the attempt is not successful and an SVC packet is to be sent, the II code-DTE cross-reference table shall be examined for another entry with the same called ground DTE address and a different Mode S II code. The procedure shall be retried using the multisite-directed protocol with the new Mode S interrogator. If there are no entries for the required called DTE, or all entries result in a failed attempt, a link failure shall be declared (7.5.2.8.3.1).

7.5.2.8.2 SUPPORT FOR THE DTE(S)

7.5.2.8.2.1 *GDLP connectivity reporting.* The GDLP shall notify the ground DTE(s) of the availability of a Mode S data link-equipped aircraft ("join event"). The GDLP shall also inform the ground DTEs when such an aircraft is no longer in contact via that GDLP ("leave event"). The GDLP shall provide for notification (on request) of all Mode S data link-equipped aircraft currently in contact with that GDLP. The notifications shall provide the ground ATN router with the subnetwork point of attachment (SNPA) address of the mobile ATN router, with the position of the aircraft and quality of service as optional parameters. The SNPA of the mobile ATN router shall be the DTE address formed by the aircraft address and a sub-address of 0 (7.5.2.3.1.3.2).

7.5.2.8.2.2 *ADLP connectivity reporting.* The ADLP shall notify all aircraft DTEs whenever the last remaining entry for a ground DTE is deleted from the II code-DTE cross-reference table (7.5.2.8.1.1). This notification shall include the address of this DTE.

7.5.2.8.2.3 *Communications requirements.* The mechanism for communication of changes in subnetwork connectivity shall be a confirmed service, such as the join/leave events that allow notification of the connectivity status.

7.5.2.8.3   ERROR PROCEDURES

7.5.2.8.3.1   Link failure. The failure to deliver a packet to the referenced XDLP after an attempt has been made to deliver this packet via all available interrogators shall be declared to be a link level failure. For an SVC, the XDCE shall enter the state *p*1 and release all resources associated with that channel. This shall include the cancellation in the transponder of any frames associated with this SVC. A Mode S CLEAR REQUEST packet shall be sent to the DCE via the reformatting process and shall be forwarded by the DCE as an ISO 8208 packet to the local DTE as described in 7.5.2.6.3.3. On the aircraft side, the channel shall not be returned to the ADCE channel pool, i.e. does not return to the state *p*1, until *Tr* seconds after the link failure has been declared (see Table 7.5-1 at the end of Chapter 7.5).

7.5.2.8.3.2 *ACTIVE CHANNEL DETERMINATION*

7.5.2.8.3.2.1   *Procedure for d1 state*. The XDLP shall monitor the activity of all SVCs, not in a READY state (*p*1). If an SVC is in the (XDCE) FLOW CONTROL READY state (*d*1) for more than Tx seconds (the active channel timer, see Tables 7.5-1 and 7.5-13) without sending a Mode S RR, RNR, DATA, or REJECT packet, then:

   a)   if the last packet sent was a Mode S REJECT packet to which a response has not been received, then the XDLP shall resend that packet;
   b)   otherwise, the XDLP shall send a Mode S RR or RNR packet as appropriate to the peer XDLP.

7.5.2.8.3.2.2   *Procedure for other states*. If an XDCE SVC is in the *p2, p3, p6, p7, d2* or *d3* state for more than *Tx* seconds, the link failure procedure of 7.5.2.8.3.1 shall be performed.

7.5.2.8.3.2.3   Link failure shall be declared if either a failure to deliver, or a failure to receive, keep-alive packets has occurred. In which case the channel shall be cleared.

7.5.2.9   The data link capability report

The data link capability report shall be as specified in CAR-ANS Part 9, 9.3.1.2.6.10.2.

7.5.2.10   System timers

7.5.2.10.1   The values for timers shall conform to the values given in Tables 7.5-1 and 7.5-13.

7.5.2.10.2   Tolerance for all timers shall be plus or minus one per cent.

7.5.2.10.3   Resolution for all timers shall be one second.

7.5.2.11   System requirements

7.5.2.11.1   Data integrity. The maximum bit error rates for data presented at the ADLP/transponder interface or the GDLP/interrogator interface measured at the local DTE/XDLP interface (and vice versa) shall not exceed 10^{-9} for undetected errors and 10^{-7} for detected errors.

Note - The maximum error rate includes all errors resulting from data transfers across the interfaces and from XDLP internal operation.

7.5.2.11.2   TIMING

7.5.2.11.2.1   *ADLP timing*. ADLP operations shall not take longer than 0.25 seconds for regular traffic and 0.125 seconds for interrupt traffic. This interval shall be defined as follows:

a)   *Transponders with downlink ELM capability*. The time that the final bit of a 128-byte data packet is presented to the DCE for downlink transfer to the time that the final bit of the first encapsulating frame is available for delivery to the transponder.

b)   *Transponders with Comm-B capability*. The time that the final bit of a user data field of 24 bytes is presented to the DCE for downlink transfer to the time that the final bit of the last of the four Comm-B segments that forms the frame encapsulating the user data is available for delivery to the transponder.

c)   *Transponders with uplink ELM capability*. The time that the final bit of the last segment of an ELM of 14 Comm-C segments that contains a user data field of 128 bytes is received by the ADLP to the time that the final bit of the corresponding packet is available for delivery to the DTE.

d)   *Transponders with Comm-A capability*. The time that the final bit of the last segment of four linked Comm-A segments that contains a user data field of 25 bytes is received by the ADLP to the time that the final bit of the corresponding packet is available for delivery to the DTE.

7.5.2.11.2.2   *GDLP TIMING*. The total time delay across the GDLP, exclusive of transmission delay, shall not be greater than 0.125 seconds.

7.5.2.11.3   *Interface rate*. The physical interface between the ADLP and the transponder shall have a minimum bit rate of 100 kilobits per second.

7.5.3   DCE AND XDCE STATE TABLES

7.5.3.1   *State table requirements*. The DCE and XDCE shall function as specified in state Tables 7.5-3 to 7.5-22. State Tables 7.5-15 through 7.5-22 shall be applied to:

a)   ADLP state transitions when the XDCE or XDLP terms in parenthesis are omitted; and

b)   GDLP state transitions when the terms in parenthesis are used and the XDCE or XDLP preceding them are omitted.

7.5.3.2   *Diagnostic and c ause c odes*. The table entries for certain conditions indicate a diagnostic code that shall be included in the packet generated when entering the state indicated. The term, "D = ," shall define the diagnostic code. When "A = DIAG ", the action taken shall be to generate an ISO 8208 DIAGNOSTIC packet and transfer it to the DTE; the diagnostic code indicated shall define the entry in the diagnostic field of the packet. The cause field shall be set as specified in 7.5.2.6.3.3. The reset cause field shall be set as specified in ISO 8208.

Note 1 - The tables provided below specify state requirements in the following order:

> *7.5-3 DCE special cases*
> *7.5-4 DTE effect on DCE restart states*
> *7.5-5 DTE effect on DCE call setup and clearing states*
> *7.5-6 DTE effect on DCE reset states*
> *7.5-7 DTE effect on DCE interrupt transfer states*
> *7.5-8 DTE effect on DCE flow control transfer states*
> *7.5-9 XDCE effect on DCE restart states*
> *7.5-10 XDCE effect on DCE call setup and clearing states*
> *7.5-11 XDCE effect on DCE reset states*
> *7.5-12 XDCE effect on DCE interrupt Transfer states*
> *7.5-15 GDLP (ADLP) effect on ADCE (GDCE) packet layer ready states*
> *7.5-16 GDLP (ADLP) effect on ADCE (GDCE) call setup and clearing states*
> *7.5-17 GDLP (ADLP) effect on ADCE (GDCE) reset states*

7.5-18 GDLP (ADLP) effect on ADCE (GDCE) interrupt transfer states
7.5-19 GDLP (ADLP) effect on ADCE (GDCE) flow control transfer states
7.5-20 DCE effect on ADCE (GDCE) call setup and clearing states
7.5-21 DCE effect on ADCE (GDCE) reset states
7.5-22 DCE effect on ADCE (GDCE) Interrupt transfer states

Note 2 - All tables specify both ADLP and GDLP actions.

Note 3 - Within the Mode S subnetwork, states p6 and d2 are transient states.

Note 4 — References to "notes" in the state tables refer to table-specific notes that follow each state table.

Note 5 - All diagnostic and cause codes are interpreted as decimal numbers.

Note 6 - An SVC between an A DCE and a G DCE may be identified by a t emporary and/or permanent channel number, as defined in 7.5.2.5.1.2.

7.5.4   MODE S PACKET FORMATS

7.5.4.1 *Formats.* The Mode S packet formats shall be as specified in Figures 7.5-3 to 7.5-22 at the end of this Chapter.

7.5.4.2 *Significance of control fields.* The structure of the format control fields used in Mode S packets shall be as specified in Figure 7.5-23 at the end of this Chapter. The significance of all control fields used in these packet formats shall be as follows:

Field symbol   Definition

AG   Address, Ground; the 8-bit binary representation of the ground DTE address (7.5.2.3.1.3.1)

AM   Address, Mobile; the 4-bit binary representation of the last two BCD digits of the mobile DTE address   (7.5.2.3.1.3.2)

CC   Clearing cause as defined in ISO 8208

CH   Channel number (1 to 15)

DC   Diagnostic code as defined in ISO 8208

DP   Data packet type (see Figure 7.5-23)

F   S-bit sequence, first packet flag

FILL   Fill field

FILL1   Has a length of 6 bits for a non-multiplexed packet in a downlink SLM frame; otherwise it is 0 bit

FILL2   Has a length of 0 bit for a non-multiplexed packet in a downlink SLM frame and for a multiplexing header; otherwise it is 2 bits

FIRST PACKET   The contents of the first of the multiplexed packets

FS   Fast select present

IN   Initialization bit

L   "More bit" for long-form MSP packets as specified in 7.5.2.7.4

LAST PACKET The contents of the last of the multiplexed packets

LENGTH	The length of a multiplexed packet in bytes expressed as an unsigned binary number
LV	User data field length; number of user bytes as specified in 7.5.2.2.3.1
M	"More bit" for SVC DATA packets as specified in 7.5.2.5.1.4.1
M/CH	MSP channel number
MP	MSP packet type (see Figure 7.5-23)
M/SN	Sequence number; the sequence number for the long form MSP packet
OD	Optional data
ODL	Optional data length
OF	Option flag
P	Priority field
PR	Packet receive sequence number
PS	Packet send sequence number
RC	Resetting cause code as defined in ISO 8208
RT	Route table as defined in 7.5.2.5.3.3.8
RTL	Route table length expressed in bytes
S	"More bit" for CALL REQUEST, CALL ACCEPT, CLEAR REQUEST and INTERRUPT packets as specified in 7.5.2.5.1.4.2
SN	Sequence number; the sequence number for this packet type
SP	Supervisory packet (see Figure 7.5-23)
SS	Supervisory subset number (see Figure 7.5-23)
ST	Supervisory type (see Figure 7.5-23)
TC	Temporary channel number (1 to 3)
UD	User data field

TABLES FOR CAR-ANS 7.5

Table 7.5-1 ADLP Mode S subnetwork timers

Timer name	*Timer label*	*Nominal value*	*Reference*
Channel retirement	*Tr*	600 s	7.5.2.8.3.1
Active channel-ADLP	*Tx*	420 s	7.5.2.8.3.2
Interrogator interrogation	*Ts*	60 s	7.5.2.8.1.2
Interrogator link	*Tz*	30 s	7.5.2.7.1.1.4.2, 7.5.2.8.1.3.2
Link frame cancellation	*Tc*	60 s	7.5.2.2.1.1.4.5
L-bit delivery ADLP	*Tm*	120 s	7.5.2.7.4.3
Packet resequencing and S-bit delivery	*Tq*	60 s	7.5.2.6.9

Table 7.5-2 DCE actions at state transition

DCE state	State defintion	Action that shall be taken when entering the state
r1	PACKET LEVEL READY	Return all SVCs to the p1 state (see p1 state explanation).
r2	DTE RESTART REQUEST	Return each SVC to the p1 state (see p1 state explanation). Issue a RESTART CONFIRMATION to the DTE.
r3	DCE RESTART REQUEST	Issue a RESTART REQUEST to the DTE. Unless entered via the r2 state, send a RESTART REQUEST to the reformatting process.
p1	READY	Release all resources assigned to SVC. Break the correspondence between the DTE/DCE SVC and the ADCE/GDCE SVC (the ADCE/GDCE SVC may not yet be in the p1 state).
p2	DTE CALL REQUEST	Determine if sufficient resources exist to support request; if so, allocate resources and forward CALL REQUEST packet to reformatting process; if not, enter DCE CLEAR REQUEST to DTE state (p7). Determination of resources and allocation is as defined in ISO 8208.
p3	DCE CALL REQUEST	Determine if sufficient resources exist to support request; if so allocate resources and forward CALL REQUEST packet to DTE; if not, send a CLEAR REQUEST packet to the reformatting process. Determination of resources and allocation is as defined in ISO 8208.
p4	DATA TRANSFER	No action.
p5	CALL COLLISION	Reassign outgoing call to another SVC (the DTE in its call collision state ignores the incoming call) and enter the DCE CALL REQUEST state (p3) for that new SVC. Enter the p2 state to process the CALL REQUEST from the DTE.
p6	DTE CLEAR REQUEST	Release all resources assigned to SVC, send a CLEAR CONFIRMATION packet to the DTE and enter p1 state.
p7	DCE CLEAR REQUEST to DTE	Forward CLEAR REQUEST packet to DTE.
d1	FLOW CONTROL READY	No action.
d2	DTE RESET REQUEST	Remove DATA packets transmitted to DTE from window; discard any DATA packets that represent partially transmitted M-bit sequences and discard any INTERRUPT packet awaiting transfer to the DTE; reset all window counters to 0; set any timers and retransmission parameters relating to DATA and INTERRUPT transfer to their initial value. Send RESET CONFIRMATION packet to DTE. Return SVC to d1 state.
d3	DCE RESET REQUEST to DTE	Remove DATA packets transmitted to DTE from window; discard any DATA packets that represent partially transmitted M-bit sequences and discard any INTERRUPT packet awaiting transfer to the DTE; reset all window counters to 0; set any timers and retransmission parameters relating to DATA and INTERRUPT transfer to their initial value. Forward RESET REQUEST packet to DTE.
i1	DTE INTERRUPT READY	No action.
i2	DTE INTERRUPT SENT	Forward INTERRUPT packet received from DTE to reformatting process.
j1	DCE INTERRUPT READY	No action.
j2	DCE INTERRUPT SENT	Forward INTERRUPT packet received from reformatting process to DTE.
f1	DCE RECEIVE READY	No action.
f2	DCE RECEIVE NOT READY	No action.
g1	DTE RECEIVE READY	No action.
g2	DTE RECEIVE NOT READY	No action.

Table 7.5-3 DCE special cases

Received from DTE	DCE special cases Any state
Any packet less than 2 bytes in length (including a valid data link level frame containing no packet)	A=DIAG D=38
Any packet with an invalid general format identifier	A=DIAG D=40
Any packet with a valid general format identifier and an assigned logical channel identifier (includes a logical channel identifier of 0)	See Table 7.5-4

Table 7.5-4 DTE effect on DCE restart states

Packet received from DTE	DCE restart states (see Note 5)		
	PACKET LEVEL READY (see Note 1) r1	DTE RESTART REQUEST r2	DCE RESTART REQUEST r3
Packets having a packet type identifier shorter than 1 byte and logical channel identifier not equal to 0	See Table 7.5-5	A=ERROR S=r3 D=38 (see Note 4)	A=DISCARD
Any packet, except RESTART, REGISTRATION (if supported) with a logical channel identifier of 0	A=DIAG D=36	A=DIAG D=36	A=DIAG D=36
Packet with a packet type identifier which is undefined or not supported by DCE	See Table 7.5-5	A=ERROR S=r3 D=33 (see Note 4)	A=DISCARD
RESTART REQUEST, RESTART CONFIRMATION, or REGISTRATION (if supported) packet with a logical channel identifier unequal to 0	See Table 7.5-5	A=ERROR S=r3 D=41 (see Note 4)	A=DISCARD
RESTART REQUEST	A=NORMAL (forward) S=r2	A=DISCARD	A=NORMAL S=p1 or d1 (see Note 2)
RESTART CONFIRMATION	A=ERROR S=r3 D=17 (see Note 6)	A=ERROR S=r3 D=18 (see Note 4)	A=NORMAL S=p1 or d1 (see Note 2)
RESTART REQUEST OR RESTART CONFIRMATION packet with a format error	A=DIAG D=38, 39, 81 or 82	A=DISCARD	A=ERROR D=38, 39, 81 or 82
REGISTRATION REQUEST or REGISTRATION CONFIRMATION packets (see Note 3)	A=NORMAL	A=NORMAL	A=NORMAL
REGISTRATION REQUEST or REGISTRATION CONFIRMATION packet with a format error (see Note 3)	A=DIAG D=38, 39, 81 or 82	A=ERROR S=r3 D=38, 39, 81 or 82 (see Note 4)	A=ERROR D=38, 39, 81 or 82
Call setup, call clearing, DATA, interrupt, flow control, or reset packet	See Table 7.5-5	A=ERROR S=r3 D=18	A=DISCARD

Table 7.5-5 DTE effect on DCE call setup and clearing states

Packet received from DTE	DCE call setup and clearing states (see Note 5)						
	READY $p1$	DTE CALL REQUEST $p2$	DCE CALL REQUEST $p3$	DATA TRANSFER $p4$	CALL COLLISION $p5$ *(see Notes 1 and 4)*	DTE CLEAR REQUEST $p6$	DCE CLEAR REQUEST to DTE $p7$
Packets having a packet type identifier shorter than 1 byte	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=38*	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=38* (see Note 2)	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=38* (see Note 2)	See Table 7.5-6	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=38* (see Note 2)	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=38* (see Note 2)	*A=DISCARD*
Packets having a packet type identifier which is undefined or not supported by DCE	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=33*	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=33* (see Note 2)	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=33* (see Note 2)	See Table 7.5-6	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=33* (see Note 2)	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=33* (see Note 2)	*A=DISCARD*
RESTART REQUEST, RESTART CONFIRMATION or REGISTRATION packet with logical channel identifier unequal to 0	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=41*	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=41* (see Note 2)	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=41* (see Note 2)	See Table 5-6	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=41* (see Note 2)	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=41* (see Note 2)	*A=DISCARD*
CALL REQUEST	*A=NORMAL* *S=p2* (forward)	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=21* (see Note 2)	*A=NORMAL* *S=p5*	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=23* (see Note 2)	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=24* (see Note 2)	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=25* (see Note 2)	*A=DISCARD*
CALL ACCEPT	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=20*	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=21* (see Note 2)	*A=NORMAL* *S=p4* *(Forward)* or *A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=42* (see Notes 2 and 3)	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=23* (see Note *2*)	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=24* (see Notes 2 and 4)	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=25* (see Note 2)	*A=DISCARD*
CLEAR REQUEST	*A=NORMAL* *S=p6*	*A=NORMAL* *S=p6* (forward)	*A=NORMAL* *S=p6* (forward)	*A=NORMAL* *S=p6* (forward)	*A=NORMAL* *S=p6* (forward)	*A=DISCARD*	*A=NORMAL* *S=p1* (do not forward)
CLEAR CONFIRMATION	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=20*	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=21*	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=22*	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=23*	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=24*	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=25*	*A=NORMAL* *S=p1* (do not forward)

68

	(see Note 2)	(see Note 2)	(see Note 2)	(see Note 2)	(see Note 2)		
DATA, interrupt, flow control or reset packets	A=ERROR S=p7 D=20	A=ERROR S=p7 D=21 (see Note 2)	A=ERROR S=p7 D=22 (see Note 2)	See Table 5-6	A=ERROR S=p7 D=24 (see Note 2)	A=ERROR S=p7 D=25 (see Note 2)	A=DISCARD

NOTES:

1. On entering the p5 state, the DCE reassigns the outgoing call to the DTE to another channel (no CLEAR REQUEST is issued) and responds to incoming DTE call as appropriate with a CLEAR REQUEST or CALL ACCEPT packet.

2. The error procedure consists of performing the actions specified when entering the p7 state (including sending a CLEAR REQUEST packet to the DTE) and additionally sending a CLEAR REQUEST packet to the XDCE (via the reformatting process).

3. The use of the fast select facility with a restriction on the response prohibits the DTE from sending a CALL ACCEPT packet.

4. The DTE in the event of a call collision must discard the CALL REQUEST packet received from the DCE.

5. Table entries are defined as follows: A = action to be taken, S = the state to be entered, D = the diagnostic code to be used in packets generated as a result of this action, DISCARD indicates that the received packet is to be cleared from the XDLP buffers, and INVALID indicates that the packet/state combination cannot occur.

Table 7.5-6 DTE effect on DCE reset states

Packet received from DTE	DCE reset states (see Note 2)		
	FLOW CONTROL READY *d1*	RESET REQUEST by DTE *d2*	DCE RESET REQUEST to DTE *d3*
Packet with a packet type identifier shorter than 1 byte	A=ERROR S=d3 D=38 (see Note 1)	A=ERROR S=d3 D=38 (see Note 1)	A=DISCARD
Packet with a packet type identifier which is undefined or not supported by DCE	A=ERROR S=d3 D=33 (see Note 1)	A=ERROR S=d3 D=33 (see Note 1)	A=DISCARD
RESTART REQUEST, RESTART CONFIRMATION, or REGISTRATION (if supported) packet with logical channel identifier unequal to 0	A=ERROR S=d3 D=41 (see Note 1)	A=ERROR S=d3 D=41 (see Note 1)	A=DISCARD
RESET REQUEST	A=NORMAL S=d2 (forward)	A=DISCARD	A=NORMAL S=d1 (do not forward)
RESET CONFIRMATION	A=ERROR S=d3 D=27 (see Note 1)	A=ERROR S=d3 D=28 (see Note 1)	A=NORMAL S=d1 (do not forward)
INTERRUPT packet	See Table 7.5-7	A=ERROR S=d3 D=28 (see Note 1)	A=DISCARD
INTERRUPT CONFIRMATION packet	See Table 7.5-7	A=ERROR S=d3 D=28 (see Note 1)	A=DISCARD

Packet received from DTE	DCE reset states (see Note 2)		
	FLOW CONTROL READY *d1*	RESET REQUEST by DTE *d2*	DCE RESET REQUEST to DTE *d3*
DATA or flow control packet	See Table 7.5-8	*A=ERROR* *S=d3* *D=28* (see Note 1)	*A=DISCARD*
REJECT supported but not subscribed to	*A=ERROR* *S=d3* *D=37* (see Note 1)	*A=ERROR* *S=d3* *D=37* (see Note 1)	*A=DISCARD*

NOTES:

1. T he e rror pr ocedure c onsists of pe rforming the s pecified ac tions when e ntering t he d3 s tate (which i ncludes forwarding a R ESET REQUEST pac ket t o the D TE) and s ending a RESET R EQUEST pac ket t o the X DCE (via t he formatting function).

2. Table entries are defined as follows: A = action to be taken, S = the state to be entered, D = the diagnostic code to be used in packets generated as a result of this action, DISCARD indicates that the received packet is to be cleared for the XDLP buffers, and INVALID *indicates that the packet/state combination cannot occur.*

Table 7.5-7 DTE effect on DCE interrupt transfer states

Packet received from DTE	DTE/DCE interrupt transfer states (see Note 2)	
	DTE INTERRUPT READY *i1*	DTE INTERRUPT SENT *i2*
INTERRUPT (see Note 1)	*A=NORMAL* *S=i2* (forward)	*A=ERROR* *S=d3* *D=44* (see Note 3)

Packet received from DTE	DTE/DCE interrupt transfer states (see Note 2)	
	DCE INTERRUPT READY *j1*	DCE INTERRUPT SENT *j2*
INTERRUPT CONFIRMATION (see Note 1)	*A=ERROR* *S=d3* *D=43* (see Note 3)	*A=NORMAL* *S=j1* (forward)

NOTES:

1. If the packet has a format error, then the error procedure applies (see Note 3). Interrupt packets with user data greater than 32 bytes should be treated as a format error.

2. Table entries are defined as follows: A = action to be taken, S = the state to be entered, D = the diagnostic code to be used in packets generated as a result of this action, DISCARD indicates that the received packet is to be cleared from the XDLP buffers, and INVALID *indicates that the packet/state combination cannot occur.*

3. The error procedure consists of performing the specified actions when entering the d3 state (which includes forwarding a RESET REQUEST packet to the DTE) and sending a RESET REQUEST packet to the XDCE (via the reformatting process).

Table 7.5-8 DTE effect on DCE flow control transfer states

Packet received from DTE	DCE flow control transfer states (see Notes 2 and 3)	
	DCE RECEIVE READY *f*1	DCE RECEIVE NOT READY *f*2
DATA packet with less than 4 bytes when using modulo 128 numbering	*A=ERROR* *S=d3* *D=38* (see Note 4)	*A=DISCARD*
DATA packet with invalid PR	*A=ERROR* *S=d3* *D=2* (see Note 4)	*A=ERROR* *S=d3* *D=2* (see Note 4)
DATA packet with valid PR but invalid PS or user data field with improper format	*A=ERROR* *S=d3* *D=1 (invalid PS)* *D=39 (UD > max negotiated length)* *D=82 (UD unaligned)* (see Note 4)	*A=DISCARD* (process PR data)
DATA packet with valid PR with M-bit set to 1 when the user data field is partially full	*A=ERROR* *S=d3* *D=165* (see Note 4)	*A=DISCARD* (process PR data)
DATA packet with valid PR, PS and user data field format	*A=NORMAL* (forward)	*A=DISCARD* (process PR data)
Packet received from DTE	DCE flow control transfer states (see Notes 2 and 3)	
	DTE RECEIVE READY *g*1	DTE RECEIVE NOT READY *g*2
RR, RNR, or REJECT packet with less than 3 bytes when using modulo 128 numbering (see Note 1)	*A=DISCARD*	*A=DISCARD*
RR, RNR, or REJECT packet with an invalid PR	*A=ERROR* *S=d3* *D=2* (see Note 4)	*A=ERROR* *S=d3* *D=2* (see Note 4)
RR packet with a valid PR	*A=NORMAL*	*A=NORMAL* *S=g1*
RNR packet with a valid PR	*A=NORMAL* *S=g2*	*A=NORMAL*
REJECT packet with a valid PR	*A=NORMAL*	*A=NORMAL* *S=g1*

NOTES:

1. If the packet has a format error, then the error procedure applies (see Note 3). Interrupt packets with user data greater than 32 bytes should be treated as a format error.

2. Table entries are defined as follows: A = action to be taken, S = the state to be entered, D = the diagnostic code to be used in packets generated as a result of this action, DISCARD indicates that the received packet is to be cleared from the XDLP buffers, and INVALID indicates that the packet/state combination cannot occur.

3. The error procedure consists of performing the specified actions when entering the d3 state (which includes forwarding a RESET REQUEST packet to the DTE) and sending a RESET REQUEST packet to the XDCE (via the reformatting process).

Table 7.5-9 XDCE effect on DCE restart states

Packet received from XDCE	DCE restart states (see Note)		
	PACKET LEVEL READY *r1*	DTE RESTART REQUEST *r2*	DCE RESTART REQUEST *r3*
CALL REQUEST	See Table 7.5-10	*Send CLEAR REQUEST to reformatting process with D=244*	*Send CLEAR REQUEST to reformatting process with D=244*
CALL ACCEPT, CLEAR REQUEST, DATA, INTERRUPT, INTERRUPT CONFIRMATION, RESET REQUEST	See Table 7.5-10	*A=DISCARD*	*A=DISCARD*

NOTES:

Note.— Table entries are defined as follows: A = action to be taken, S = the state to be entered, D = the diagnostic code to be used in packets generated as a result of this action, DISCARD indicates that the received packet is to be cleared from the XDLP buffers, and INVALID *indicates that the packet/state combination cannot occur.*

Table 7.5-10 XDCE effect on DCE call setup and clearing states

Packet received from XDCE	DCE call setup and clearing states (see Note 5)						
	READY *p1*	DTE CALL REQUEST *p2*	DCE CALL REQUEST *p3*	DATA TRANSFER *p4*	CALL COLLISION *p5*	DTE CLEAR REQUEST *p6*	DCE CLEAR REQUEST to DTE *p7*
CALL REQUEST	*A=NORMAL S=p3* (forward)	INVALID	INVALID	INVALID	INVALID	INVALID	INVALID
CALL ACCEPT	*A=DISCARD*	*A=NORMAL S=p4* (forward)	INVALID	INVALID	INVALID	*A=DISCARD*	*A=DISCARD*
CLEAR REQUEST	*A=DISCARD*	*A=NORMAL S=p7* (forward)	*A=NORMAL S=p7* (forward)	*A=NORMAL S=p7* (forward)	INVALID	*A=DISCARD*	*A=DISCARD*
DATA, INTERRUPT, INTERRUPT CONFIRMATION, or RESET REQUEST	*A=DISCARD*	INVALID	INVALID	See Table 7.5-11	INVALID	*A=DISCARD*	*A=DISCARD*

NOTES:

Note.— Table entries are defined as follows: A = action to be taken, S = the state to be entered, D = the diagnostic code to be used in packets generated as a result of this action, DISCARD indicates that the received packet is to be cleared from the XDLP buffers, and INVALID *indicates that the packet/state combination cannot occur.*

Table 7.5-11 XDCE effect on DCE reset states

Packet received from XDCE	DCE reset states (see Note)		
	FLOW CONTROL READY *d1*	DTE RESET REQUEST *d2*	DCE RESET REQUEST to DTE *d3*
RESET REQUEST	*A=NORMAL* *S=d3* (forward)	*A=NORMAL* *S=d1* (forward)	*A=DISCARD*
INTERRUPT	See Table 7.5-12	*A=DISCARD*	*A=DISCARD*
INTERRUPT CONFIRMATION	See Table 7.5-12	*A=DISCARD*	INVALID
DATA	*A=NORMAL* (forward)	*A=DISCARD*	*A=DISCARD*

NOTES:

Note.— Table entries are defined as follows: A = action to be taken, S = the state to be entered, D = the diagnostic code to be used in packets generated as a result of this action, DISCARD indicates that the received packet is to be cleared from the XDLP buffers, and INVALID indicates that the packet/state combination cannot occur.

Table 7.5-12 XDCE effect on DCE interrupt transfer states

Packet received from XDCE	DCE interrupt transfer states (see Note)	
	DTE INTERRUPT READY *i1*	DTE INTERRUPT SENT *i2*
INTERRUPT CONFIRMATION	INVALID	*A=NORMAL* *S=i1* (forward)

Packet received from XDCE	DCE interrupt transfer states (see Note)	
	DCE INTERRUPT READY *j1*	DCE INTERRUPT SENT *j2*
INTERRUPT	*A=NORMAL* *S=j2* (forward)	INVALID

NOTES:

Note.— Table entries are defined as follows: A = action to be taken, S = the state to be entered, D = the diagnostic code to be used in packets generated as a result of this action, DISCARD indicates that the received packet is to be cleared from the XDLP buffers, and INVALID indicates that the packet/state combination cannot occur.

Table 7.5-13 GDLP Mode S subnetwork timers

Timer name	Timer label	Nominal value	Reference
Active channel-GDLP	*Tx*	300 s	7.5.2.8.3.2
L-bit delivery-GDLP	*Tm*	120 s	7.5.2.7.4.3
Packet resequencing and S-bit delivery	*Tq*	60 s	7.5.2.6.9

Table 7.5-14 XDCE actions at state transition

XDCE state	State defintion	Action that shall be taken when entering the state
*r*1	PACKET LEVEL READY	Return all SVCs to the *p*1 state.
*p*1	READY	Release all resources assigned to the SVC. Break the correspondence between the ADCE/GDCE SVC and the DTE/DCE SVC (the DTE/DCE SVC may not yet be in a *p*1 state).
*p*2	GDLP(ADLP) CALL REQUEST	Determine if sufficient resources exist to support request; if so allocate resources and forward Mode S CALL REQUEST packet to reformatting process; if not, enter ADCE(GDCE) CLEAR REQUEST to GDLP(ADLP) state (*p*7).
*p*3	ADCE(GDCE) CALL REQUEST	Determine if sufficient resources exist to support request; if so, allocate resources and forward Mode S CALL REQUEST packet to frame processing; if not, send Mode S CLEAR REQUEST to reformatting process and go to state *p*1. Do not forward the Mode S CALL REQUEST to the peer XDCE.
*p*4	DATA TRANSFER	No action.
*p*6	GDLP(ADLP) CLEAR REQUEST	Release all resources, send a Mode S CLEAR CONFIRMATION packet to the peer XDCE and enter the *p*1 state.
*p*7	ADCE(GDCE) CLEAR REQUEST to GDLP(ADLP)	Forward Mode S CLEAR REQUEST packet to the peer XDCE via frame processing.
*d*1	FLOW CONTROL READY	No action.
*d*2	GDLP(ADLP) RESET REQUEST	Remove Mode S DATA packets transmitted to peer XDCE from window; discard any DATA packets that represent partially transmitted M-bit sequences and discard any Mode S INTERRUPT packets awaiting transfer to the peer XDCE; reset all flow control window counters to 0 (7.5.2.6.7.1). Send Mode S RESET CONFIRMATION packet to the peer XDCE. Return SVC to *d*1 state. Forward Mode S RESET REQUEST packet to reformatting process.
*d*3	ADCE(GDCE) RESET REQUEST to GDLP(ADLP)	Remove Mode S DATA packets transmitted to peer XDCE from window; discard any DATA packets that represent partially transmitted M-bit sequences and discard any Mode S INTERRUPT packets awaiting transfer to the peer XDCE; reset all flow control window counters to 0 (7.5.2.6.7.1). Forward Mode S RESET REQUEST packet to peer XDCE via frame processing.
*i*1	GDLP(ADLP) INTERRUPT READY	No action.
*i*2	GDLP(ADLP) INTERRUPT SENT	Forward Mode S INTERRUPT packet received from peer XDCE to the reformatting process.
*j*1	ADCE(GDCE) INTERRUPT READY	No action.
*j*2	ADCE(GDCE) INTERRUPT SENT	Forward Mode S INTERRUPT packet received from the reformatting process.
*f*1	ADCE(GDCE) RECEIVE READY	No action.
*f*2	ADCE(GDCE) RECEIVE NOT READY	No action.
*g*1	GDLP(ADLP) RECEIVE READY	No action.
*g*2	GDLP(ADLP) RECEIVE NOT READY	No action.

Table 7.5-15 GDLP (ADLP) effect on ADCE (GDCE) packet layer ready states

Packet received from GDLP (ADLP) (see Note 2)	ADCE (GDCE) states (see Notes 1 and 3) PACKET LEVEL READY $r1$
CH=0 with no TC present (see Note 4) or CH=0 in a CALL ACCEPT by ADLP packet	*A=DISCARD*
Unassigned packet header	*A=DISCARD*
Call setup, call clearing, DATA, interrupt, flow control, or reset	See Table 7.5-16

NOTES:

1. The XDCE state is not necessarily the same state as the DTE/DCE interface.

2. All packets from the peer XDLP have been checked for duplication before evaluation as represented by this table.

3. Table entries are defined as follows: A = action to be taken, S = the state to be entered, D = the diagnostic code to be used in packets generated as a result of this action, DISCARD indicates that the received packet is to be cleared from the XDLP buffers, and INVALID indicates that the packet/state combination cannot occur.

4. Where CH=0 and a valid TC is present in a CLEAR REQUEST by ADLP or GDLP packet or a CLEAR CONFIRMATION by ADLP or GDLP packet, it is handled as described in 7.5.2.5.1.2.3 and Table 7.5-16.

Table 7.5-16 GDLP (ADLP) effect on ADCE (GDCE) call setup and clearing states

Packet received from GDLP (ADLP) (see Note 2)	DCE call setup and clearing states (see Note 5)					
	READY $p1$	GDLP (ADLP) CALL REQUEST $p2$	ADCE (GDCE) CALL REQUEST $p3$	DATA TRANSFER $p4$	GDLP (ADLP) CLEAR REQUEST $p6$	ADCE (GDCE) CLEAR REQUEST to GDLP (ADLP) $p7$
Format error (see Note 3)	*A=ERROR* *(see Note 10)* *S=p7* *D=33* *(see Note 9)*	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=33* *(see Note 6)*	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=33* *(see Notes 6 and 9)*	See Table 7.5-17	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=25* *(see Note 6)*	*A=DISCARD*
CALL REQUEST	*A=NORMAL* (7.5.2.6.3.1) *S=p2* (forward request to DCE)	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=21* *(see Note 6)*	Not applicable (see Note 4)	Not applicable (see Note 4)	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=25* *(see Note 6)*	*A=DISCARD*
CALL ACCEPT	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=20* (see Note 10)	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=21* *(see Note 6)*	*A=NORMAL* (7.5.2.6.3.1) *S=p4* (forward to DCE), or A=ERROR	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=23* *(see Note 6)*	*A=ERROR* *S=p7* *D=25* *(see Note 6)*	*A=DISCARD*
CLEAR REQUEST	*A=NORMAL* (7.5.2.6.3.3) *S=p6* (do not forward)	*A=NORMAL* (7.5.2.6.3.3) *S=p6* (forward to DCE)	*A=NORMAL* (7.5.2.6.3.3) *S=p6* (forward to DCE)	*A=NORMAL* (7.5.2.6.3.3) *S=p6* (forward to DCE)	*A=DISCARD*	*A=NORMAL* (7.5.2.6.3.3) *S=p1* (do not forward)

Packet received from GDLP (ADLP) (see Note 2)	DCE call setup and clearing states (see Note 5)					
	READY $p1$	GDLP (ADLP) CALL REQUEST $p2$	ADCE (GDCE) CALL REQUEST $p3$	DATA TRANSFER $p4$	GDLP (ADLP) CLEAR REQUEST $p6$	ADCE (GDCE) CLEAR REQUEST to GDLP (ADLP) $p7$
CLEAR CONFIRMATION	$A=ERROR$ $S=p7$ $D=20$ (see Note 10)	$A=ERROR$ $S=p7$ $D=21$ (see Note 6)	$A=ERROR$ $S=p7$ $D=22$ (see Note 6)	$A=ERROR$ $S=p7$ $D=23$ (see Note 6)	$A=ERROR$ $S=p7$ $D=25$ (see Note 6)	$A=NORMAL$ (7.5.2.6.3.3) $S=p1$ (do not forward)
DATA, interrupt, flow control or reset packets	$A=ERROR$ $S=p7$ $D=20$ (see Note 10)	$A=ERROR$ $S=p7$ $D=21$ (see Notes 6 and 9)	$A=ERROR$ $S=p7$ $D=22$ (see Notes 5 and 6)	See Table 7.5-17	$A=ERROR$ $S=p7$ $D=25$ (see Note 6)	$A=DISCARD$

NOTES:

1. The XDCE is not necessarily in the same state as the DTE/DCE interface.
2. All packets from the peer XDLP have been checked for duplication before evaluation as represented by this table.
3. A format error may result from an S-bit sequence having a first or intermediate packet shorter than the maximum length, or else from an invalid LV field in a CALL REQUEST, CALL ACCEPT, CLEAR REQUEST or INTERRUPT packet. There are no other detectable Mode S format errors.
4. The ADCE assigns all channel numbers used between the ADLP and GDLP, hence call collisions are not possible. When a CALL REQUEST by GDLP packet is received bearing a temporary channel number associated with an SVC in the p4 state, the association of the temporary to permanent channel number is broken (7.5.2.5.1.2.3).
5. Not applicable to the GDLP.
6. The error procedure consists of performing the actions specified when entering the p7 state (including sending a CLEAR REQUEST packet to the peer XDLP) and additionally sending a CLEAR REQUEST packet to the DCE (via the reformatting process).
7. Table entries are defined as follows: A = action to be taken, S = the state to be entered, D = the diagnostic code to be used in packets generated as a result of this action, DISCARD indicates that the received packet is to be cleared from the XDLP buffers, and INVALID indicates that the packet/state combination cannot occur.
8. The number in parentheses below an "A = NORMAL" table entry is the paragraph number in this document that defines the actions to be taken to perform normal processing on the received packet. If no paragraph number is referenced, the normal processing is defined in the table entry.
9. An error condition is declared and transfer to the p7 state is possible only if the ground DTE address is known unambiguously. Otherwise the action is to discard the packet.
10. The error procedure consists of performing the action when entering the p7 state (including sending a CLEAR REQUEST packet to the XDLP) but without sending a CLEAR REQUEST packet to the local DCE.

Table 7.5-17 GDLP (ADLP) effect on ADCE (GDCE) reset states

Packet received from GDLP (ADLP) (see Note 2)	ADCE (GDCE) reset states (see Notes 1, 4 and 5)		
	FLOW CONTROL READY $d1$	GDLP (ADLP) RESET REQUEST $d2$	ADCE (GDCE) RESET REQUEST to GDLP (ADLP) $d3$
RESET REQUEST	$A=NORMAL$ (7.5.2.6.7) $S=d2$ (forward to DCE)	$A=DISCARD$	$A=NORMAL$ (7.5.2.6.7) $S=d1$ (do not forward)
RESET CONFIRMATION	$A=ERROR$ $S=d3$ $D=27$ (see Note 3)	$A=ERROR$ $S=d3$ $D=28$ (see Note 3)	$A=NORMAL$ (7.5.2.6.7) $S=d1$ (do not forward)

Packet received from GDLP (ADLP) (see Note 2)	ADCE (GDCE) reset states (see Notes 1, 4 and 5)		
	FLOW CONTROL READY *d*1	GDLP (ADLP) RESET REQUEST *d*2	ADCE (GDCE) RESET REQUEST to GDLP (ADLP) *d*3
INTERRUPT	See Table 7.5-18	*A=ERROR* *S=d3* *D=28* (see Note 3)	*A=DISCARD*
INTERRUPT CONFIRMATION	See Table 7.5-18	*A=ERROR* *S=d3* *D=28* (see Note 3)	*A=DISCARD*
DATA or flow control packet	See Table 7.5-19	*A=ERROR* *S=d3* *D=28* (see Note 3)	*A=DISCARD*
Format error (see Note 6)	*A=ERROR* *S=d*3 *D=33* (see Note 3)	*A=ERROR* *S=d3* *D=33* (see Note 3)	*A=DISCARD*

NOTES:

1. The XDCE is not necessarily in the same state as the DTE/DCE interface.

2. All packets from the peer XDLP have been checked for duplication before evaluation as represented by this table.

3. T he e rror pr ocedure c onsists of pe rforming the s pecified ac tions when e ntering t he d3 s tate (which i ncludes forwarding a RESET REQUEST packet to the peer XDLP) and sending a RESET REQUEST packet to the DCE (via the formatting function).

4. Table entries are defined as follows: A = action to be taken, S = the state to be entered, D = the diagnostic code to be used in packets generated as a result of this action, DISCARD indicates that the received packet is to be cleared for the XDLP buffers, and INVALID indicates that the packet/state combination cannot occur.

5. The number in par entheses be low an " A = NORMAL" table entry is the paragraph number in this document that defines t he ac tions t o be t aken t o perform nor mal pr ocessing on t he r eceived pac ket. If no par agraph num ber i s referenced, the normal processing is defined in the table entry.

6. A format error may result from an S-bit s equence having a first or intermediate packet shorter than the maximum length, or else from an invalid L V field in a CALL REQUEST, CALL ACCEPT, CLEAR REQUEST, or INTERRUPT packet. There are no other detectable Mode S format errors.

Table 7.5-18 GDLP (ADLP) effect on ADCE (GDCE) interrupt transfer states

Packet received from GDLP (ADLP) (see Note 2)	ADCE/GDCE interrupt transfer states (see Notes 1, 3 and 4)	
	GDLP (ADLP) INTERRUPT READY *i*1	GDLP (ADLP) INTERRUPT SENT *i*2
INTERRUPT (see Note 6)	*A=NORMAL* (7.5.2.6.4.5) *S=i2* (forward to DCE)	*A=ERROR* *S=d3* *D=44* (see Note 5)

Packet received from GDLP (ADLP) (see Note 2)	ADCE/GDCE interrupt transfer states (see Notes 1, 3 and 4)	
	ADCE (GDCE) INTERRUPT READY $j1$	ADCE (GDCE) INTERRUPT SENT $j2$
INTERRUPT CONFIRMATION	*A=ERROR* *S=d3* *D=43* (see Note 5)	*A=NORMAL* *(7.5.2.6.4.5)* *S=j1* (forward confirmation to DCE)

NOTES:

1. The XDCE is not necessarily in the same state as the DTE/DCE interface.

2. All packets from the peer XDLP have been checked for duplication before evaluation as represented by this table.

3. Table entries are defined as follows: A = action to be taken, S = the state to be entered, D = the diagnostic code to be used in packets generated as a result of this action, DISCARD indicates that the received packet is to be cleared for the XDLP buffers, and INVALID indicates that the packet/state combination cannot occur.

4. The number in parentheses below an "A = NORMAL" table entry is the paragraph number in this document that defines the actions to be taken to perform normal processing on the received packet. If no paragraph number is referenced, the normal processing is defined in the table entry.

5. The error procedure consists of performing the specified actions when entering the d3 state (which includes forwarding a RESET REQUEST packet to the peer XDLP) and sending a RESET REQUEST packet to the DCE (via the reformatting process).

6. User data length for INTERRUPT packets greater than 32 bytes, or an out of sequence INTERRUPT packet, are considered as errors.

Table 7.5-19 GDLP (ADLP) effect on ADCE (GDCE) flow control transfer states

Packet received from GDLP (ADLP) (see Note 2)	ADCE (GDCE) flow control transfer states (see Notes 1, 6 and 7)	
	ADCE (GDCE) RECEIVE READY $f1$	ADCE (GDCE) RECEIVE NOT READY $f2$
DATA packet with invalid PR (see Note 3)	*A=ERROR* *S=d3* *D=2* (see Note 8)	*A=ERROR* *S=d3* *D=2* (see Note 8)
DATA packet with valid PR, invalid PS or LV subfield (see Notes 4 and 5)	*A=DISCARD,* *but process the PR value and send REJECT packet containing the expected PS value (see Note 5)*	*A=DISCARD, but process the PR value and send REJECT packet containing the expected PS value when busy condition ends*
DATA packet with valid PR, PS and LV subfield	*A=NORMAL* *(7.5.2.6.4.4)* *(forward)*	*A=PROCESS, if possible; or* *A=DISCARD, but process the PR value and send REJECT containing the expected PS value when busy condition ends*

Packet received from GDLP (ADLP) (see Note 2)	ADCE (GDCE) flow control transfer states (see Notes 1, 6 and 7)	
	GDLP (ADLP) RECEIVE READY *g1*	GDLP (ADLP) RECEIVE NOT READY *g2*
RR, RNR, REJECT packet with invalid PR (see Note 3)	*A=ERROR* *S=d3* *D=2* (see Note 8)	*A=ERROR* *S=d3* *D=2* (see Note 8)
RR with valid PR field (see Note 9)	*A=NORMAL* (7.5.2.6.5)	*A=NORMAL* (7.5.2.6.6) *S=g1*
RNR with valid PR value (see Note 9)	*A=NORMAL* (7.5.2.6.5) *S=g2*	*A=NORMAL* (7.5.2.6.6)
REJECT with valid PR (see Note 9)	*A=NORMAL* (7.5.2.6.5)	*A=NORMAL* (7.5.2.6.6) *S=g1*

NOTES:

1. The XDCE is not necessarily in the same state as the DTE/DCE interface.

2. All packets from the peer XDLP have been checked for duplication before evaluation as represented by this table.

3. An invalid PR value is one which is less than the PR value (modulo 16) of the last packet sent by the peer XDLP, or greater than the PS value of the next data packet to be transmitted by the XDLP.

4. An invalid PS value is one which is different from the next expected value for PS.

5. An invalid LV subfield is one which represents a value that is too large for the size of the segment received. In the event of an LV field error which gives rise to a loss of confidence in the correctness of the other fields in the packet, the packet is discarded without any further action.

6. Table entries are defined as follows: A = action to be taken, S = the state to be entered, D = the diagnostic code to be used in packets generated as a result of this action, DISCARD indicates that the received packet is to be cleared from the XDLP buffers, and INVALID indicates that the packet/state combination cannot occur.

7. The number in parentheses below an "A = NORMAL" table entry is the paragraph number in this document that defines the actions to be taken to perform normal processing on the received packet. If no paragraph number is referenced, the normal processing is defined in the table entry.

8. The error procedure consists of performing the specified actions when entering the d3 state (which includes forwarding a RESET REQUEST packet to the peer XDLP) and sending a RESET REQUEST packet to the DCE (via the reformatting process).

9. RR, RNR, and REJECT packets have no end-to-end significance and are not forwarded to the DCE.

10. The receipt of a packet smaller than the maximum packet size with M-bit = 1 will cause a reset to be generated and the remainder of the sequence will be discarded.

Table 7.5-20 DCE effect on ADCE (GDCE) call setup and clearing states

Packet received from DCE (see Notes 2 and 4)	ADCE (GDCE) call setup and clearing states (see Notes 1, 7 and 8)					
	READY $p1$	GDLP (ADLP) CALL REQUEST $p2$	ADCE (GDCE) CALL REQUEST $p3$	DATA TRANSFER $p4$	GDLP (ADLP) CLEAR REQUEST $p6$	ADCE (GDCE) to GDLP (ADLP) CLEAR REQUEST $p7$
CALL REQUEST (see Note 6)	*A=NORMAL* (7.5.2.6.3.1) *S=p3* (forward)	INVALID (see Note 5)	INVALID (see Note 3)	INVALID (see Note 3)	INVALID (see Note 3)	INVALID (see Note 3)
CALL ACCEPT (see Note 4)	*A=DISCARD*	*A=NORMAL* *S=P4* (forward)	INVALID (see Note 3)	INVALID (see Note 3)	*A=DISCARD*	*A=DISCARD*
CLEAR REQUEST (see Note 4)	*A=DISCARD*	*A=NORMAL* (7.5.2.6.3.3) *S=p7* (forward)	*A=NORMAL* (7.5.2.6.3.3) *S=p7* (forward)	*A=NORMAL* (7.5.2.6.3.3) *S=p7* (forward)	*A=DISCARD*	*A=DISCARD*
DATA, INTERRUPT or RESET packets (see Note 4)	*A=DISCARD*	INVALID (see Note 3)	INVALID (see Note 3)	See Table 7.5-21	*A=DISCARD*	*A=DISCARD*

NOTES:

1. The XDCE is not necessarily in the same state as the DTE/DCE interface.

2. This is the DTE packet received via the DCE after all DTE/DCE processing has occurred. Procedures local to the DTE/DCE interface (such as RR, RNR, and REJECT if in effect), do not affect the XDCE directly. All error procedures as documented in ISO 8208 have been performed. Hence certain packets are rejected by the interface and are not represented in this table.

3. The DCE in its protocol operation with the DTE will detect this error condition, hence the erroneous packet can be said never to "reach" the XDCE; see also Note 2.

4. The channel number for the DTE/DCE need not be the same channel number used for the ADCE/GDCE; a packet from the DTE which contains a channel number is associated with an air/ground channel by means of a previously established cross-reference table. If none exists then the DTE/DCE channel by definition references an air/ground channel in the p1 state.

5. The ADCE assigns all channel numbers used between the ADLP and GDLP; hence call collisions (denoted p5 ISO 8208) are not possible; see also Note 4.

6. A CALL REQUEST from the DTE can never be associated with an XDCE channel number which is not in the p1 state.

7. Table entries are defined as follows: A = action to be taken, S = the state to be entered, D = the diagnostic code to be used in packets generated as a result of this action, DISCARD indicates that the received packet is to be cleared from the XDLP buffers, and INVALID indicates that the packet/state combination cannot occur.

8. The number in parentheses below an "A = NORMAL" table entry is the paragraph number in this document that defines the actions to be taken to perform normal processing on the received packet. If no paragraph number is referenced, the normal processing is defined in the table entry.

Table 7.5-21 DCE effect on ADCE (GDCE) reset states

Packet received from DCE	ADCE (GDCE) reset states (see Notes 1, 4 and 5)		
	FLOW CONTROL READY $d1$	GDLP (ADLP) RESET REQUEST $d2$	ADCE (GDCE) RESET REQUEST to GDLP (ADLP) $d3$
RESET REQUEST	*A=NORMAL* (7.5.2.6.7) *S=d3* (forward)	*A=NORMAL* (7.5.2.6.7) *S=d1* (forward)	*A=DISCARD*

RESET CONFIRMATION	INVALID (see Note 3)	INVALID (see Note 3)	INVALID (see Note 3)
INTERRUPT	See Table 7.5-22	*A=DISCARD*	*Hold interrupt until Mode S reset complete*
INTERRUPT CONFIRMATION	See Table 7.5-22	*A=DISCARD*	INVALID (see Note 3)
DATA (see Note 2)	*A=NORMAL* (7.5.2.6.4) (forward)	*A=DISCARD*	*Hold data until Mode S reset complete*

NOTES:

1. The XDCE is not necessarily in the same state as the DTE/DCE interface.

2. This is the DTE packet received via the DCE after all DTE/DCE processing has occurred. Procedures local to the DTE/DCE interface (such as RR, RNR, and REJECT if in effect), do not affect the XDCE directly. All error procedures as documented in ISO 8208 have been performed. Hence certain packets are rejected by the interface and are not represented in this table.

3. The DCE in its protocol operation with the DTE will detect this error condition, hence the erroneous packet can be said never to "reach" the XDCE; see also Note 2.

4. Table entries are defined as follows: A = action to be taken, S = the state to be entered, D = the diagnostic code to be used in packets generated as a result of this action, DISCARD indicates that the received packet is to be cleared from the XDLP buffers, and INVALID indicates that the packet/state combination cannot occur.

5. The number in parentheses below an "A = NORMAL" table entry is the paragraph number in this document that defines the actions to be taken to perform normal processing on the received packet. If no paragraph number is referenced, the normal processing is defined in the table entry.

Table 7.5-22 DCE effect on ADCE (GDCE) interrupt transfer states

Packet received from DCE (see Note 2)	ADCE (GDCE) interrupt transfer state (see Notes 1, 4 and 5)	
	GDLP (ADLP) INTERRUPT READY *i*1	GDLP (ADLP) INTERRUPT SENT *i*2
INTERRUPT CONFIRMATION	INVALID (see Note 3)	*A=NORMAL* (7.5.2.6.4.5) *S=i1* (forward)

Packet received from DCE (see Note 2)	ADCE (GDCE) interrupt transfer states (see Notes 1, 4 and 5)	
	ADCE (GDCE) INTERRUPT READY *j*1	ADCE (GDCE) INTERRUPT SENT *j*2
INTERRUPT	*A=NORMAL* (7.5.2.6.4.5) *S=j2* (forward)	INVALID (see Note 3)

NOTES:

1. The XDCE is not necessarily in the same state as the DTE/DCE interface.

2. This is the DTE packet received via the DCE after all DTE/DCE processing has occurred. Procedures local to the DTE/DCE interface (such as RR, RNR, and REJECT if in effect), do not affect the XDCE directly. All

error procedures as documented in ISO 8208 have been performed. Hence certain packets are rejected by the interface and are not represented in this state.

3. The DCE in its protocol operation with the DTE will detect this error condition, hence the erroneous packet can be said never to "reach" the XDCE; see also Note 2.

4. Table entries are defined as follows: A = action to be taken, S = the state to be entered, D = the diagnostic code to be used in packets generated as a result of this action, DISCARD indicates that the received packet is to be cleared from the XDLP buffers, and INVALID indicates that the packet/state combination cannot occur.

5. The number in parentheses below an "A = NORMAL" table entry is the paragraph number in this document that defines the actions to be taken to perform normal processing on the received packet. If no paragraph number is referenced, the normal processing is defined in the table entry.

Table 7.5-23 Broadcast identifier number assignments

Uplink broadcast identifier	Assignment
00_{16}	Not valid
01_{16}	Reserved (differential GNSS correction)
30_{16}	Not valid
31_{16}	Reserved for ACAS (RA broadcast)
32_{16}	Reserved for ACAS (ACAS broadcast)
Others	Unassigned
Downlink broadcast identifier	Assignment
00_{16}	Not valid
02_{16}	Reserved (traffic information service)
10_{16}	Data link capability report
20_{16}	Aircraft identification
FE_{16}	Update request
FF_{16}	Search request
Others	Unassigned

Table 7.5-24 Register number assignments

Transponder register No.	Assignment
00_{16}	Not valid
01_{16}	Unassigned
02_{16}	Linked Comm-B, segment 2
03_{16}	Linked Comm-B, segment 3
04_{16}	Linked Comm-B, segment 4

05_{16}		Extended squitter airborne position
06_{16}		Extended squitter surface position
07_{16}		Extended squitter
08_{16}		Extended squitter identification and type
09_{16}		Extended squitter airborne velocity
$0A_{16}$		Extended squitter event-driven information
$0B_{16}$		Air/air information 1 (aircraft state)
$0C_{16}$		Air/air information 2 (aircraft intent)
$0D_{16} - 0E_{16}$		Reserved for air/air state information
$0F_{16}$		Reserved for ACAS
$10_{16} - 0E_{16}$		Data link capability report
17_{16}		Common usage GICB capability report
$18_{16} - 1F_{16}$		Mode S specific services capability reports
20_{16}		Aircraft identification
21_{16}		Aircraft and airline registration markings
22_{16}		Antenna positions
23_{16}		Reserved for antenna position
24_{16}		Reserved for aircraft parameters
25_{16}		Aircraft type
$26_{16} - 2F_{16}$		Unassigned
30_{16}		ACAS active resolution advisory
$31_{16} - 3F_{16}$		Unassigned
40_{16}		Selected vertical intention
41_{16}		Next waypoint identifier
42_{16}		Next waypoint position
43_{16}		Next waypoint information
44_{16}		Meteorological routine air report
45_{16}		Meteorological hazard report
46_{16}		Reserved for flight management system Mode 1
47_{16}		Reserved for flight management system Mode 2
48_{16}		VHF channel report
$49_{16} - 4F_{16}$		Unassigned
50_{16}		Track and turn report
51_{16}		Position report coarse
52_{16}		Position report fine

53_{16}	Air-referenced state vector
54_{16}	Waypoint 1
55_{16}	Waypoint 2
56_{16}	Waypoint 3
$57_{16} - 5E_{16}$	Unassigned
$5F_{16}$	Quasi-static parameter monitoring
60_{16}	Heading and speed report
61_{16}	Extended squitter emergency/priority status
62_{16}	Reserved for target state and status information
63_{16}	Reserved for extended squitter
64_{16}	Reserved for extended squitter
65_{16}	Aircraft operational status
$66_{16} - 6F_{16}$	Reserved for extended squitter
$70_{16} - 75_{16}$	Reserved for future aircraft downlink parameters
$76_{16} - E0_{16}$	Unassigned
$E1_{16} - E2_{16}$	Reserved for Mode S BITE
$E3_{16}$	Transponder type/part number
$E4_{16}$	Transponder software revision number
$E5_{16}$	ACAS unit part number
$E6_{16}$	ACAS unit software revision number
$E7_{16} - F0_{16}$	Unassigned
$F1_{16}$	Military applications
$F2_{16}$	Military applications
$F3_{16} - FF_{16}$	Unassigned

Note.— In the context of Table 7.5-24, the term "aircraft" can be understood as "transponder carrying aircraft", "pseudo-aircraft (e.g. an obstacle)" or "vehicle".

Table 7.5-25 MSP channel number assignments

Uplink channel number	Assignment
0	Not valid
1	Reserved (specific services management)
2	Reserved (traffic information service)
3	Reserved (ground-to-air alert)
4	Reserved (ground derived position)

5	ACAS sensitivity level control
6	Reserved (ground-to-air service request)
7	Reserved (air-to-ground service response)
8 - 63	Unassigned

Downlink channel number	Assignment
0	Not valid
1	Reserved (specific services management)
2	Unassigned
3	Reserved (data flash)
4	Reserved (position request)
5	Unassigned
6	Reserved (ground-to-air service response)
7	Reserved (air-to-ground service request)
8 - 63	Unassigned

FIGURES FOR CAR-ANS 7.5
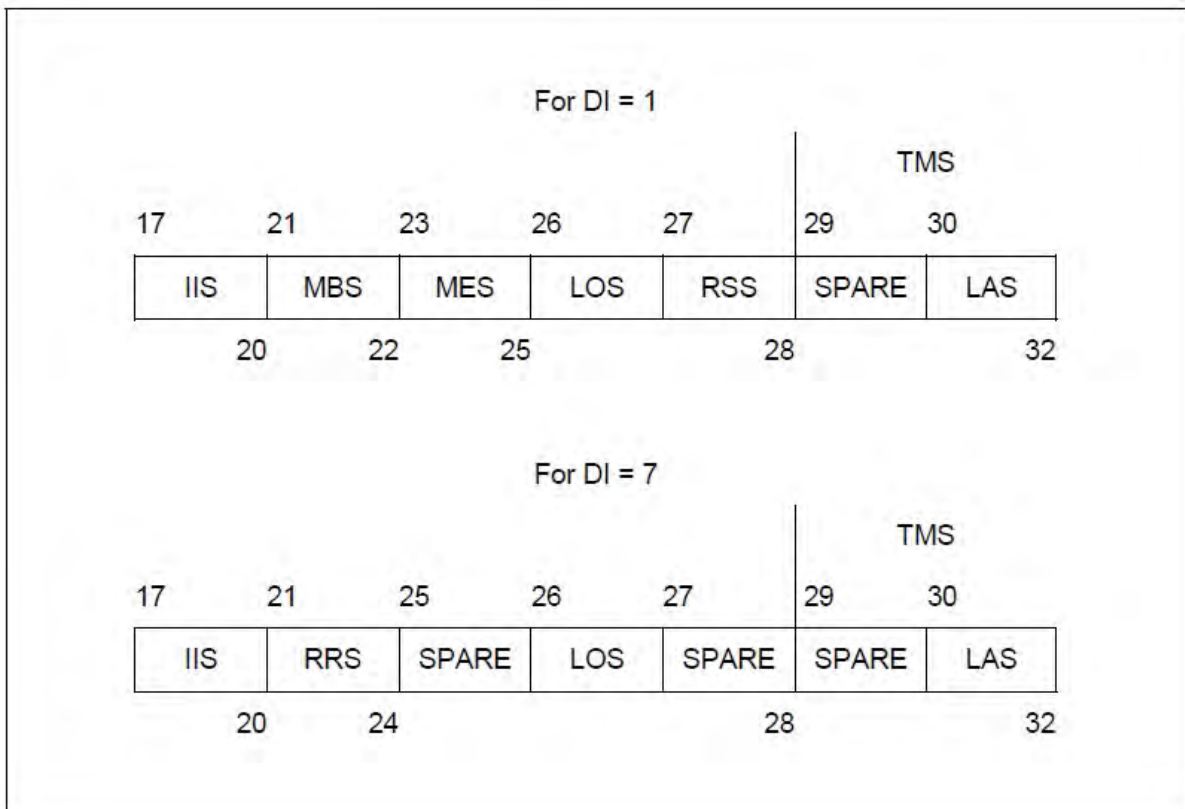
Figure 7.5-1 The SD field structure
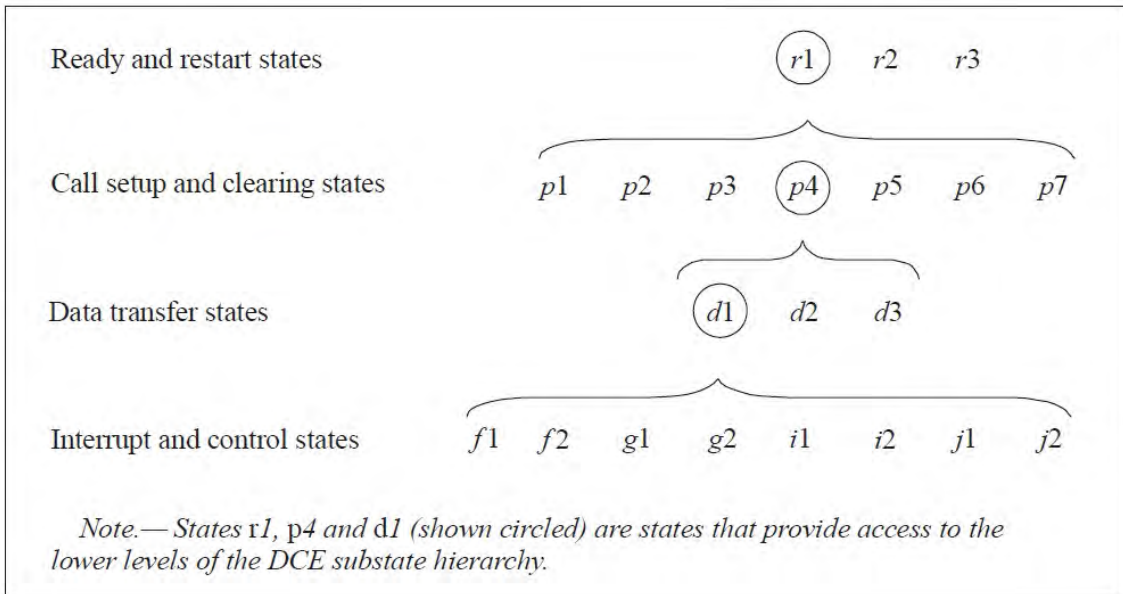
Figure 7.5-2 DCE substate hierarchy

1	2	3	4 5	6 7	8
DP=0	MP=1	SP=1	ST=0		FILL2
P	FILL	SN			
CH			LAM		
AG					
S	FS	F	LV		
UD					

Figure 7.5-3 CALL REQUEST by ADLP packet

1	2	3	4 5	6 7	8
DP=0	MP=1	SP=1	ST=0		FILL
P	FILL	SN			
FILL		TC	AM		
AG					
S	FS	F	LV		
UD					

Figure 7.5-4 CALL REQUEST by GDLP packet

1	2	3	4 5	6 7	8
DP=0	MP=1	SP=1	ST=1	FILL2	
TC		SN			
CH		AM			
AG					
S	FILL	F	LV		
UD					

Figure 7.5-5 CALL ACCEPT by ADLP packet

1	2	3	4 5	6 7	8
DP=0	MP=1	SP=1	ST=1	FILL	
FILL		SN			
CH		AM			
AG					
S	FILL	F	LV		
UD					

Figure 7.5-6 CALL ACCEPT by GDLP packet

1	2	3	4 5	6 7	8
DP=0	MP=1	SP=1	ST=2	FILL2	
TC		SN			
CH		AM			
AG					
CC					
DC					
S	FILL	F	LV		
UD					

Figure 7.5-7 CLEAR REQUEST by ADLP packet

Figure 7.5-8 CLEAR REQUEST by GDLP packet

1	2	3	4 5	6 7	8
DP=0	MP=1	SP=1	ST=2	FILL	
TC			SN		
CH			AM		
AG					
CC					
DC					
S	FILL		F	LV	
UD					

Figure 7.5-9 CLEAR CONFIRMATION by ADLP packet

1	2	3	4 5	6 7	8
DP=0	MP=1	SP=1	ST=3	FILL2	
TC			SN		
CH			AM		
AG					

Figure 7.5-10 CLEAR CONFIRMATION by GDLP packet

1	2	3	4 5	6 7	8
DP=0	MP=1	SP=1	ST=3	FILL	
TC			SN		
CH			AM		
AG					

1		2		3		4	5		6	7		8
DP=1		M			SN							
FILL1												
PS								PR				
CH								LV				
UD												

Figure 7.5-11 DATA packet
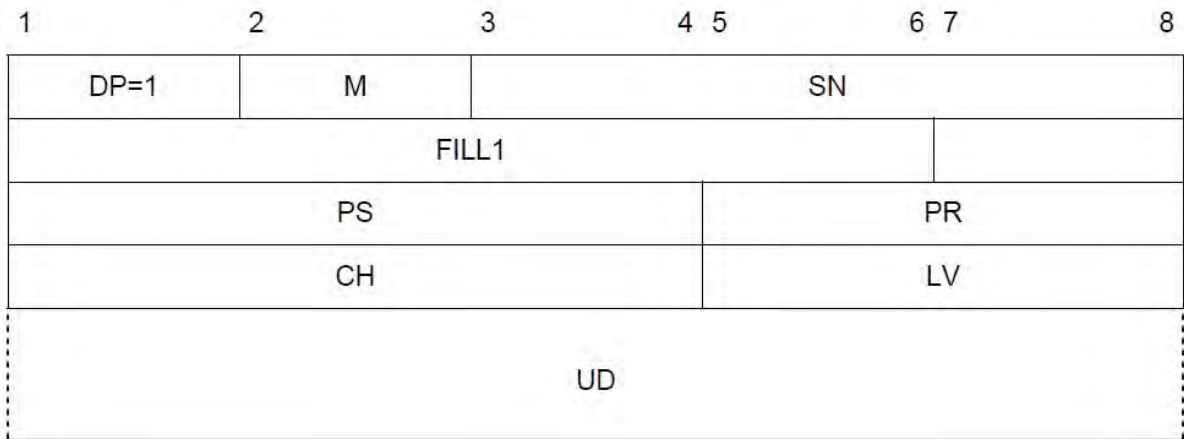
1		2		3		4	5		6	7		8
DP=0		MP=1		SP=3		ST=1			FILL2			
S		F			SN							
CH								LV				
UD												
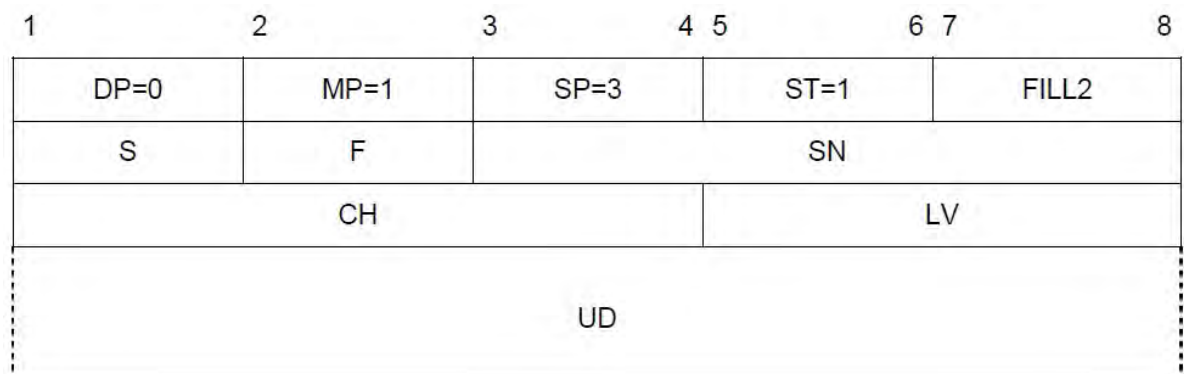
Figure 7.5-12 INTERRUPT packet

1		2		3		4	5		6	7		8
DP=0		MP=1		SP=3		ST=3			SS=0			
FILL2				SN								
CH								FILL				
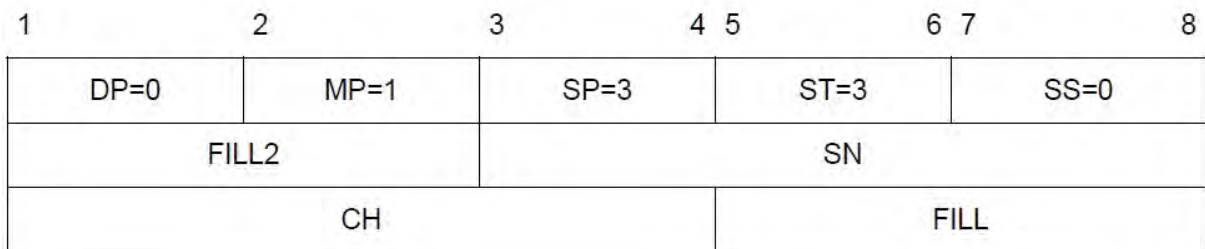
Figure 7.5-13 INTERRUPT CONFIRMATION packet

1		2		3		4	5		6	7		8
DP=0		MP=1		SP=3		ST=3			SS=1			
FILL2				SN								
CH								PR				
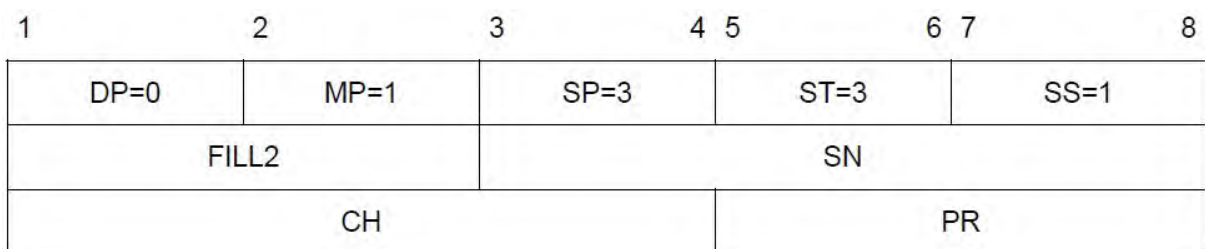
Figure 7.5-14 REJECT packet

1	2	3	4 5	6 7	8
DP=0	MP=1	SP=2	ST=0	FILL2	
FILL		SN			
CH		PR			

Figure 7.5-15 RECEIVE READY packet

1	2	3	4 5	6 7	8
DP=0	MP=1	SP=2	ST=1	FILL2	
FILL		SN			
CH		PR			

Figure 7.5-16 RECEIVE NOT READY packet

1	2	3	4 5	6 7	8
DP=0	MP=1	SP=2	ST=2	FILL2	
FILL		SN			
CH		FILL			
RC					
DC					

Figure 7.5-17 RESET REQUEST packet

1	2	3	4 5	6 7	8
DP=0	MP=1	SP=2	ST=3	FILL2	
FILL		SN			
CH		FILL			

Figure 7.5-18 RESET CONFIRMATION packet

1	2	3	4 5	6 7	8
DP=0	MP=1	SP=3	ST=0	OF	IN
RTL					
RT					
ODL					
OD					
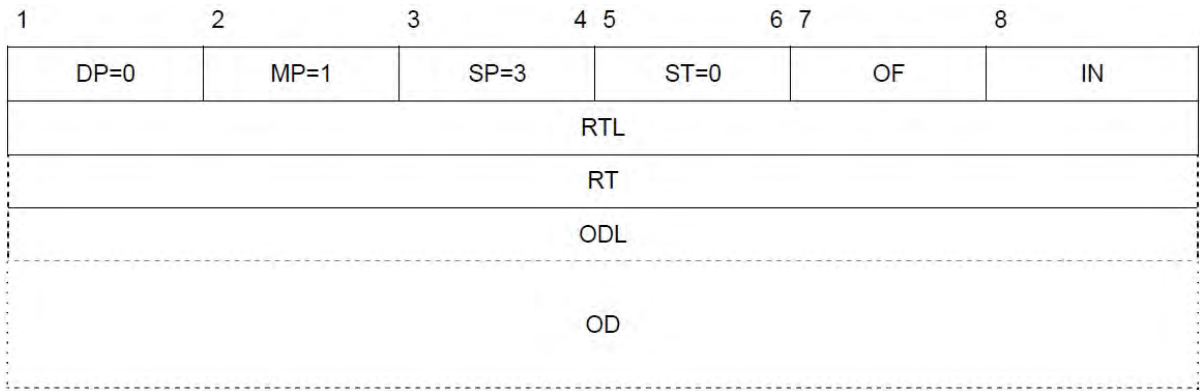
Figure 7.5-19 ROUTE packet

1	2	3	4 5	6 7	8
DP=0	MP=1	SP=3	ST=2	FILL2	
LENGTH					
FIRST PACKET					
LENGTH					
LAST PACKET					
LENGTH = 0					
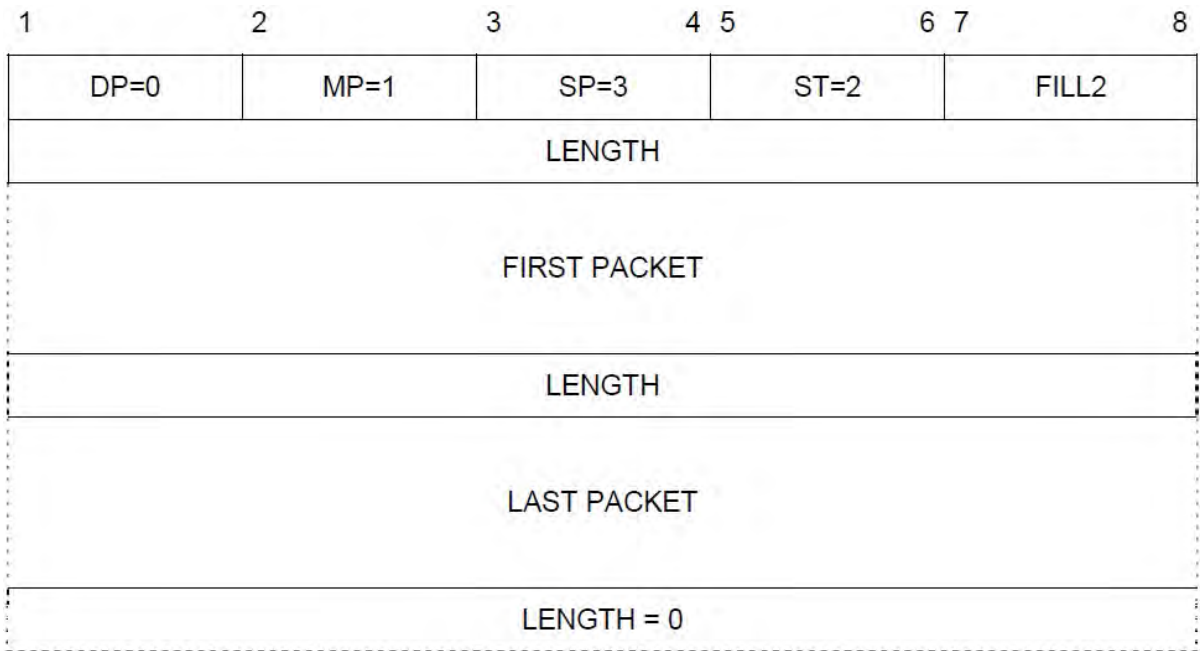
Figure 7.5-20 MULTIPLEX packet

1	2	3	4 5	6 7	8
DP=0	MP=0	M/CH			
FILL1					
UD					
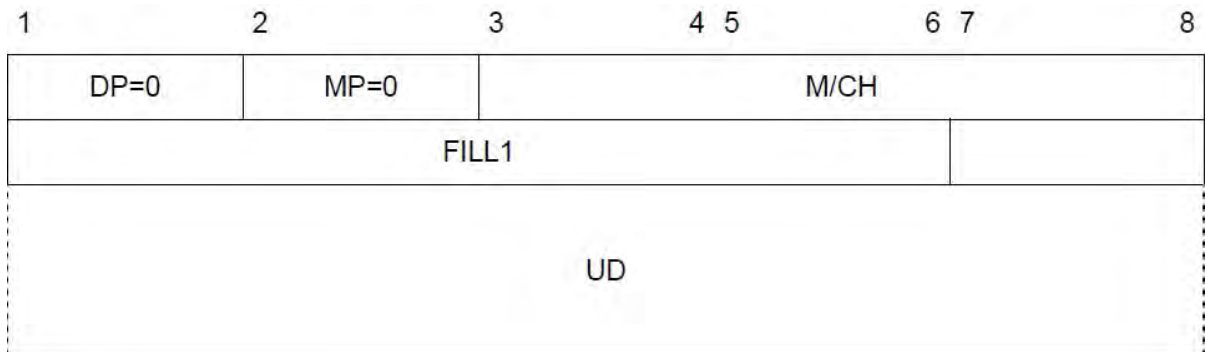
Figure 7.5-21 SHORT FORM MSP packet

Figure 7.5-22 LONG FORM MSP packet

1	2	3	4 5	6 7	8
DP=0	MP=1	SP=0	L	M/SN	
FILL2		M/CH			
UD					

LEGEND:

      DP = DATA packet type

      MP = MSP packet type

      SP = SUPERVISORY packet

      ST = SUPERVISORY type

      SS = SUPREVISORY subset

Figure 7.5-23 Control fields used in MODE S packets

7.6 VHF AIR-GROUND DIGITAL LINK (VDL)

7.6.1 DEFINITIONS AND SYSTEM CAPABILITIES

Note 1 — The very high frequency (VHF) digital link (VDL) Mode 2 and the VDL Mode 4 provide data service capabilities. The VDL Mode 3 provides both voice and data service capabilities. The data capability is a constituent mobile subnetwork of the aeronautical telecommunication network (ATN). In addition, the VDL may provide non-ATN functions. Standards and Recommended Practices (SARPs) for the VDL are defined and referenced below.

Note 2 — Additional information on VDL is contained in the Manuals on VHF VDL Mode 2, VDL Mode 3 and VDL Mode 4 Technical Specifications (Docs 9776, 9805 and 9816).

Note 3 — Sections 7.6.1.2 to 7.6.8.2 contain Standards and Recommended Practices for VDL Modes 2 and 3. Section 7.6.9 contains Standards and Recommended Practices for VDL Mode 4.

7.6.1.1   DEFINITIONS

Automatic dependent surveillance-broadcast (ADS-B). A means by which aircraft, aerodrome vehicles and other objects can automatically transmit and/or receive data such as identification, position and additional data, as appropriate, in a broadcast mode via a data link.

Broadcast. A transmission of information relating to air navigation that is not addressed to a specific station or stations.

Burst. A time-defined, contiguous set of one or more related signal units which may convey user information and protocols, signalling, and any necessary preamble.

Current slot. The slot in which a received transmission begins.

Data circuit-terminating equipment (DCE). A DCE is a network provider equipment used to facilitate communications between DTEs.

Data link entity (DLE). A protocol state machine capable of setting up and managing a single data link connection.

Data link service (DLS) sublayer. The sublayer that resides above the MAC sublayer. For VDL Mode 4, the DLS sublayer resides above the VSS sublayer. The DLS manages the transmit queue, creates and destroys DLEs for connection-oriented communications, provides facilities for the LME to manage the DLS, and provides facilities for connectionless communications.

Data terminal equipment (DTE). A DTE is an endpoint of a subnetwork connection.

Extended Golay Code. An error correction code capable of correcting multiple bit errors.

Frame. The link layer frame is composed of a sequence of address, control, FCS and information fields. For VDL Mode 2, these fields are bracketed by opening and closing flag sequences, and a frame may or may not include a variable-length information field.

Gaussian filtered frequency shift keying (GFSK). A continuous-phase, frequency shift keying technique using two tones and a Gaussian pulse shape filter.

Global signalling channel (GSC). A channel available on a worldwide basis which provides for communication control.

Link. A link connects an aircraft DLE and a ground DLE and is uniquely specified by the combination of aircraft DLS address and the ground DLS address. A different subnetwork entity resides above every link endpoint.

Link layer. The layer that lies immediately above the physical layer in the Open Systems Interconnection protocol model. The link layer provides for the reliable transfer of information across the physical media. It is subdivided into the data link sublayer and the media access control sublayer.

Link management entity (LME). A protocol state machine capable of acquiring, establishing and maintaining a connection to a single peer system. An LME establishes data link and subnetwork connections, "hands-off" those connections, and manages the media access control sublayer and physical layer. An aircraft LME tracks how well it can communicate with the ground stations of a single ground system. An aircraft VME instantiates an LME for each ground station that it monitors. Similarly, the ground VME instantiates an LME for each aircraft that it monitors. An LME is deleted when communication with the peer system is no longer viable.

M burst. A management channel data block of bits used in VDL Mode 3. This burst contains signalling information needed   for media access and link status monitoring.

Media access control (MAC). The sublayer that acquires the data path and controls the movement of bits over the data path. Mode 2. A data-only VDL mode that uses D8PSK modulation and a carrier sense multiple access (CSMA) control scheme. Mode 3. A voice and data VDL mode that uses D8PSK modulation and a TDMA media access control scheme.

Mode 4. A data-only VDL mode using a GFSK modulation scheme and self-organizing time division multiple access (STDMA).

Physical layer. The lowest level layer in the Open Systems Interconnection protocol model. The physical layer is concerned with the transmission of binary information over the physical medium (e.g. VHF radio).

Quality of service. The information relating to data transfer characteristics used by various communication protocols to achieve various levels of performance for network users.

Reed-Solomon code. An error correction code capable of correcting symbol errors. Since symbol errors are collections of bits, these codes provide good burst error correction capabilities.

Self-organizing time division multiple access (STDMA). A multiple access scheme based on time-shared use of a radio frequency (RF) channel employing: (1) discrete contiguous time slots as the fundamental shared resource; and (2) a set of operating protocols that allows users to mediate access to these time slots without reliance on a master control station.

Slot. One of a series of consecutive time intervals of equal duration. Each burst transmission starts at the beginning of a slot.

Subnetwork connection. A long-term association between an aircraft DTE and a ground DTE using successive virtual calls to maintain context across link handoff.

Subnetwork dependent convergence function (SNDCF). A function that matches the characteristics and services of a particular subnetwork to those characteristics and services required by the internetwork facility.

Subnetwork entity. In this document, the phrase "ground DCE" will be used for the subnetwork entity in a ground station communicating with an aircraft; the phrase "ground

DTE" will be used for the subnetwork entity in a ground router communicating with an aircraft station; and, the phrase "aircraft DTE" will be used for the subnetwork entity in an aircraft communicating with the station. A subnetwork entity is a packet layer entity as defined in ISO 8208.

Subnetwork layer. The layer that establishes, manages and terminates connections across a subnetwork.

System. A VDL-capable entity. A system comprises one or more stations and the associated VDL management entity. A system may either be an aircraft system or a ground system.

Time division multiple access (TDMA). A multiple access scheme based on time-shared use of an RF channel employing: (1) discrete contiguous time slots as the fundamental shared resource; and (2) a set of operating protocols that allows users to interact with a master control station to mediate access to the channel.

User group. A group of ground and/or aircraft stations which share voice and/or data connectivity. For voice communications, all members of a user group can access all communications. For data, communications include point-to-point connectivity for air-to-ground messages, and point-to-point and broadcast connectivity for ground-to-air messages.

VDL management entity (VME). A VDL-specific entity that provides the quality of service requested by the ATN-defined SN_SME. A VME uses the LMEs (that it creates and destroys) to enquire the quality of service available from peer systems.

VDL Mode 4 burst. A VHF digital link (VDL) Mode 4 burst is composed of a sequence of source address, burst ID, information, slot reservation and frame check sequence (FCS) fields, bracketed by opening and closing flag sequences.

Note — The start of a burst may occur only at quantized time intervals and this constraint allows the propagation delay between the transmission and reception to be derived.

VDL Mode 4 DLS system. A VDL system that implements the VDL Mode 4 DLS and subnetwork protocols to carry ATN packets or other packets.

VDL Mode 4 specific services (VSS) sublayer. The sublayer that resides above the MAC sublayer and provides VDL Mode 4 specific access protocols including reserved, random and fixed protocols.

VDL station. An aircraft-based or ground-based physical entity, capable of VDL Mode 2, 3 or 4.

Note - In the context of this chapter, a VDL station is also referred to as a "station".

Vocoder. A low bit rate voice encoder/decoder.

Voice unit. A device that provides a simplex audio and signalling interface between the user and VDL.

VSS user. A user of the VDL Mode 4 specific services. The VSS user could be higher layers in the VDL Mode 4 SARPs or an external application using VDL Mode 4.

7.6.1.2   Radio channels and functional channels

7.6.1.2.1   *Aircraft station radio frequency range.* An aircraft station shall be capable of tuning to any of the channels in the range specified in 7.6.1.4.1 within 100 milliseconds after the receipt of an autotune command. In addition, for VDL Mode 3, an aircraft station shall be able to tune to any channel in the range specified in 7.6.1.4.1 within 100 milliseconds after the receipt of any tuning command.

7.6.1.2.2 *Ground s tation r adio f requency r ange*. A ground station shall be capable of operating on its assigned channel within the radio frequency range detailed in 7.6.1.4.1.

7.6.1.2.3 *Common s ignalling c hannel.* Frequency 136.975MHz shall be reserved as a worldwide common signalling channel (CSC) for VDL Mode 2.

7.6.1.3 System capabilities

7.6.1.3.1 *Data t ransparency*. The VDL system shall provide code-independent, byte-independent transfer of data.

7.6.1.3.2 *Broadcast*. The VDL system shall provide link layer data broadcast services (Mode 2) and/or voice and data broadcast services (Mode 3). For VDL Mode 3, the data broadcast service shall support network multicasting capability originating from the ground.

7.6.1.3.3 *Connection m anagement.* The VDL system shall establish and maintain a reliable communications path between the aircraft and the ground system while allowing but not requiring manual intervention.

Note — In this context "reliable" is defined by the BER requirement specified in 7.6.3.5.1.

7.6.1.3.4 *Ground ne twork t ransition*. A VDL-equipped aircraft shall transition from one ground station to another when circumstances dictate.

7.6.1.3.5 *Voice ca pability*. The VDL Mode 3 system shall support a transparent, simplex voice operation based on a "Listen-Before-Push-To-Talk" channel access.

7.6.1.4 Air-ground VHF digital link communications system characteristics

7.6.1.4.1 The radio frequencies used shall be selected from the radio frequencies in the band 117.975-137 MHz. The lowest assignable frequency shall be 118.000 MHz, and the highest assignable frequency shall be 136.975 MHz. The separation between assignable frequencies (channel spacing) shall be 25 kHz.

Note - Volume V specifies that the block of frequencies from 136.9 - 136.975 MHz inclusive is reserved for VHF air-ground digital communications.

7.6.1.4.2 The design polarization of emissions shall be vertical.

7.6.2 SYSTEM CHARACTERISTICS OF THE GROUND INSTALLATION

7.6.2.1 Ground station transmitting function

7.6.2.1.1 *Frequency s tability*. The radio frequency of VDL ground station equipment operation shall not vary more than plus or minus 0.0002 per cent (2 parts per million) from the assigned frequency.

Note — The f requency s tability f or V DL gr ound s tations us ing D SB-AM m odulation i s specified in CAR-ANS 8.2 for 25 kHz channel spacing.

7.6.2.2 Power.

7.6.2.2.1 The effective radiated power shall be such as to provide a field strength of at least 75 microvolts per metre (minus 109 dBW/m^2) within the defined operational coverage of the facility, on the basis of free-space propagation.

7.6.2.3 Spurious emissions

7.6.2.3.1 Spurious emissions shall be kept at the lowest value which the state of the technique and the nature of the service permit.

Note — Appendix S3 to the ITU Radio Regulations (Volume 2) specifies the levels of spurious emissions to which transmitters must conform.

7.6.2.4   Adjacent channel emissions

7.6.2.4.1 The amount of power from a VDL ground transmitter under all operating conditions when measured over the 25 kHz channel bandwidth of the first adjacent channel shall not exceed 0 dBm.

7.6.2.4.1.1 The amount of power from all new installations of a VDL ground transmitter under all operating conditions when measured over the 25 kHz channel bandwidth of the first adjacent channel shall not exceed 2 dBm.

7.6.2.4.2   The amount of power from a VDL ground transmitter under all operating conditions when measured over the 25 kHz channel bandwidth of the second adjacent channel shall be less than minus 25 dBm and from thereon it shall monotonically decrease at the minimum rate of 5 dB per octave to a maximum value of minus 52 dBm.

7.6.2.4.2.1   The amount of power from all new installations of a VDL ground transmitter under all operating conditions when measured over the 25 kHz channel bandwidth of the second adjacent channel shall be less than minus 28 dBm.

7.6.2.4.2.2   The amount of power from all new installations of a VDL ground transmitter under all operating conditions when measured over the 25 kHz channel bandwidth of the fourth adjacent channel shall be less than minus 38 dBm, and from thereon it shall monotonically decrease at the minimum rate of 5 dB per octave to a maximum value of minus 53 dBm.

7.6.2.4.3   The amount of power from a VDL ground transmitter under all operating conditions when measured over a 16 kHz channel bandwidth centred on the first adjacent channel shall not exceed minus 20 dBm.

7.6.2.4.3.1   The amount of power from all new installations of a VDL ground transmitter under all operating conditions when measured over a 16 kHz channel bandwidth centred on the first adjacent channel shall not exceed minus 18 dBm.

7.6.2.4.4 All VDL ground transmitters shall meet the provisions of 7.6.2.4.1.1, 7.6.2.4.2.1, 7.6.2.4.2.2 and 7.6.2.4.3.1, subject to the conditions of 7.6.2.4.5.

7.6.2.4.5 Requirements of mandatory compliance of the provisions of 7.6.2.4.4 shall be made on the basis of regional air navigation agreements which specify the airspace of operation and the implementation timescales. The agreements shall provide at least two years' notice of mandatory compliance of ground systems.

7.6.3 SYSTEM CHARACTERISTICS OF THE AIRCRAFT INSTALLATION

7.6.3.1 *Frequency stability*. The radio frequency of VDL aircraft equipment shall not vary more than plus or minus 0.0005 per cent (5 parts per million) from the assigned frequency.

7.6.3.2   *Power*. The effective radiated power shall be such as to provide a field strength of at least 20 microvolts per metre (minus 120 dBW/m^2) on the basis of free-space propagation, at ranges and altitudes appropriate to the operational conditions pertaining to the areas over which the aircraft is operated.

7.6.3.3   Spurious emissions

7.6.3.3.1   Spurious emissions shall be kept at the lowest value which the state of the technique and the nature of the service permit.

Note - Appendix S3 to the ITU Radio Regulations (Volume 2) specifies the levels of spurious emissions to which transmitters must conform.

7.6.3.4   Adjacent channel emissions

7.6.3.4.1   The amount of power from a VDL aircraft transmitter under all operating conditions when measured over the 25 kHz channel bandwidth of the first adjacent channel shall not exceed 0 dBm.

7.6.3.4.1.1 The amount of power from all new installations of a VDL aircraft transmitter under all operating conditions when measured over the 25 kHz channel bandwidth of the first adjacent channel shall not exceed 2 dBm.

7.6.3.4.2   The amount of power from a VDL aircraft transmitter under all operating conditions when measured over the 25 kHz channel bandwidth of the second adjacent channel shall be less than minus 25 dBm and from thereon it shall monotonically decrease at the minimum rate of 5 dB per octave to a maximum value of minus 52 dBm.

7.6.3.4.2.1   The amount of power from all new installations of a VDL aircraft transmitter under all operating conditions when measured over the 25 kHz channel bandwidth of the second adjacent channel shall be less than minus 28 dBm.

7.6.3.4.2.2   The amount of power from all new installations of a VDL aircraft transmitter under all operating conditions when measured over the 25 kHz channel bandwidth of the fourth adjacent channel shall be less than minus 38 dBm, and from thereon it shall monotonically decrease at the minimum rate of 5 dB per octave to a maximum value of minus 53 dBm.

7.6.3.4.3   The amount of power from a VDL aircraft transmitter under all operating conditions when measured over a 16 kHz channel bandwidth centred on the first adjacent channel shall not exceed minus 20 dBm.

7.6.3.4.3.1   The amount of power from all new installations of a VDL aircraft transmitter under all operating conditions when measured over a 16 kHz channel bandwidth centred on the first adjacent channel shall not exceed minus 18 dBm.

7.6.3.4.4   All VDL aircraft transmitters shall meet the provisions of 7.6.3.4.1.1, 7.6.3.4.2.1, 7.6.3.4.2.2 and 7.6.3.4.3.1, subject to the conditions of 7.6.3.4.5.

7.6.3.4.5 Requirements of mandatory compliance of the provisions of 7.6.3.4.4 shall be made on the basis of regional air navigation agreements which specify the airspace of operation and the implementation timescales. The agreements shall provide at least two years' notice of mandatory compliance of aircraft systems.

7.6.3.5   Receiving function

7.6.3.5.1 *Specified error rate.* The specified error rate for Mode 2 operation shall be the maximum corrected Bit Error Rate (BER) of 1 in 10^4. The specified error rate for Mode 3 operation shall be the maximum uncorrected BER of 1 in 10^3. The specified error rate for Mode 4 operation shall be the maximum uncorrected BER of 1 in 10^4.

Note - The above physical layer BER requirements are derived from the BER requirement imposed by ATN at the subnetwork interface.

7.6.3.5.2   *Sensitivity.* The receiving function shall satisfy the specified error rate with a desired signal strength of not more than 20 microvolts per metre (minus 120 dBW/m^2).

Note - The required signal strength at the edge of the service volume takes into account the requirements of the system and signal losses within the system, and considers environmental noise sources.

7.6.3.5.3 *Out-of-band i mmunity pe rformance.* The receiving function shall satisfy the specified error rate with a desired signal field strength of not more than 40 microvolts per metre (minus 114 dBW/m^2) and with an undesired DSB-AM D8PSK or GFSK signal on the adjacent or any other assignable channel being at least 40 dB higher than the desired signal.

7.6.3.5.3.1 The receiving function of all new installations of VDL shall satisfy the specified error rate with a desired signal field strength of not more than 40 microvolts per metre (minus 114 dBW/m^2) and with an undesired VHF DSB-AM, D8PSK or GFSK signal at least 60 dB higher than the desired signal on any assignable channel 100 kHz or more away from the assigned channel of the desired signal.

Note — This l evel of i nterference i mmunity p erformance p rovides a r eceiver p erformance consistent with the influence of the VDL RF s pectrum mask as specified in 7.6.3.4 with an effective i solation t ransmitter/receiver i solation of 6 9 d B. Bet ter t ransmitter a nd receiver performance could result in less isolation required. Guidance material on the measurement technique is included in CAR-ANS Part 13, Attachment A, section 7.

7.6.3.5.3.2 The receiving function of all installations of VDL shall meet the provisions of 7.6.3.5.3.1, subject to the conditions of 7.6.3.5.3.3.

7.6.3.5.3.3 Requirements of mandatory compliance of the provisions of 7.6.3.5.3.2 shall be made on the basis of regional air navigation agreements which specify the airspace of operation and the implementation timescales. The agreement shall provide for at least two years' notice of mandatory compliance of aircraft systems.

7.6.3.5.4 INTERFERENCE IMMUNITY PERFORMANCE

7.6.3.5.4.1 The receiving function shall satisfy the specified error rate with a desired field strength of not more than 40 microvolts per metre, and with one or more out-of-band signals, except for VHF FM broadcast signals, having a total level at the receiver input of minus 33 dBm.

Note - In ar eas whe re adj acent higher b and s ignal i nterference exceeds t his specification, a higher immunity requirement will apply.

7.6.3.5.4.2 The receiving function shall satisfy the specified error rate with a desired field strength of not more than 40 microvolts per metre, and with one or more VHF FM broadcast signals having a total level at the receiver input of minus 5 dBm.

7.6.4 PHYSICAL LAYER PROTOCOLS AND SERVICES

The aircraft and ground stations shall access the physical medium operating in simplex mode.

7.6.4.1   Functions

7.6.4.1.1 The physical layer shall provide the following functions:

   a)   transmitter and receiver frequency control;
   b)   digital reception by the receiver;
   c)   digital transmission by the transmitter; and
   d)   notification services.

7.6.4.1.1.1 *Transmitter/receiver f requency co ntrol.* The VDL physical layer shall set the transmitter or receiver frequency as commanded by the link management entity (LME).

Note - The LME is a link layer entity as contained in the Manuals on VDL Mode 2 and VDL Mode 3 Technical Specifications.

7.6.4.1.1.2 *Digital reception by the receiver.* The receiver shall decode input signals and forward them to the higher layers for processing.

7.6.4.1.1.3 *Digital transmission.* The VDL physical layer shall appropriately encode and transmit information received from higher layers over the RF channel.

7.6.4.2 Modes 2 and 3 common physical layer

7.6.4.2.1 *Modulation scheme.* Modes 2 and 3 shall use differentially encoded 8 phase shift keying (D8PSK), using a raised cosine filter with α = 0.6 (nominal value). The information to be transmitted shall be differentially encoded with 3 bits per symbol (baud) transmitted as changes in phase rather than absolute phase. The data stream to be transmitted shall be divided into groups of 3 consecutive data bits, least significant bit first. Zeros shall be padded to the end of the transmissions if needed for the final channel symbol.

7.6.4.2.1.1 *Data encoding.* A binary data stream entering a differential data encoder shall be converted into three separate binary streams X, Y, and Z so that bits 3n form X, bits 3n + 1 form Y, and bits 3n + 2 form Z. The triplet at time k (X_k, Y_k, Z_k) shall be converted to a change in phase as shown in Table 7.6-1 at the end of Chapter 7.6, and the absolute phase φ_k is the accumulated series of $\Delta\varphi_k$, that is:

$$\varphi_k = \varphi_{k-1} + \Delta\varphi_k$$

7.6.4.2.1.2 Transmitted signal form. The phase-modulated baseband signal as defined in 7.6.4.2.1.1 shall excite the pulse shape filter.

$$s(t) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{+\infty} h(\phi_k, t - kT_s)$$

where:
   h   is the complex impulse response of the pulse shape filter; k   is defined in 7.6.4.2.1.1;
   φ   is defined by the equation in 7.6.4.2.1.1;
   t   is time;
   T_s is time duration of each symbol.

The output (function of time) of the pulse shape filter (s(t)) shall modulate the carrier frequency. The pulse shape filter shall have a nominal complex frequency response of a raised-cosine filter with α =0.6.

7.6.4.2.2 *Modulation rate.* The symbol rate shall be 10 500 symbols/second, resulting in a nominal bit rate of 31 500 bits/s. The modulation stability requirements for Modes 2 and 3 are provided in Table 7.6-2.

7.6.4.3 Mode 2 specific physical layer

Note - The Mode 2 specific physical layer specification includes a description of the Mode 2 training sequence, forward error correction (FEC), interleaving, bit scrambling, channel sensing, and physical layer system parameters.

7.6.4.3.1 To transmit a sequence of frames, a station shall insert the bit numbers and flags (per the data link service description for Mode 2 as contained in the Manual on VDL Mode 2 Technical Specifications), compute the FEC (per 7.6.4.3.1.2), interleave (per 7.6.4.3.1.3), prepend the training sequence (per 7.6.4.3.1.1), carry out bit scrambling (per 7.6.4.3.1.4) and finally encode and modulate the RF signal (per 7.6.4.2.1).

7.6.4.3.1.1 *Training s equence.* Data transmission shall begin with a demodulator training sequence consisting of five segments:

   a) transmitter ramp-up and power stabilization;
   b) synchronization and ambiguity resolution;
   c) reserved symbol;
   d) transmission length; and
   e) header FEC.

Note — Immediately a fter t hese s egments f ollows a n AVL C f rame w ith t he f ormat a s contained i n t he d ata link s ervice d escription in t he M anual o n VDL M ode 2 Technical Specifications.

7.6.4.3.1.1.1 Transmitter ramp-up and power stabilization. The purpose of the first segment of the training sequence, called the ramp-up, is to provide for transmitter power stabilization and receiver AGC settling, and it shall immediately precede the first symbol of the unique word. The duration of the ramp-up shall be five symbol periods. The time reference point (t), for the following specification is the centre of the first unique word symbol, a point that occurs half a symbol period after the end of the ramp-up. Conversely stated, the beginning of the ramp-up starts at t = -5.5 symbol periods. The transmitted power shall be less than -40 dBc prior to time t = -5.5 symbol periods. The ramp-up shall provide that at time t = -3.0 symbol periods the transmitted power is 90 per cent of the manufacturer's stated output power or greater (see Figure 7.6-1 at the end of Chapter 7.6). Regardless of the method used to implement (or truncate) the raised cosine filter, the output of the transmitter between times t = -3.0 and t = -0.5 will appear as if '000' symbols were transmitted during the ramp-up period.

Note 1 - For Mode 3, the timing reference point is the same as the "power reference point".

Note 2 - It is desirable to maximize the time allowed for the AGC settling time. Efforts should be made to have power above 90 per cent of nominal output power at t - 3.5 symbol periods.

7.6.4.3.1.1.2 Synchronization and ambiguity resolution. The second segment of the training sequence shall consist of the unique word:

> 000 010 011 110 000 001 101 110 001 100 011 111 101 111 100 010

and shall be transmitted from left to right.

7.6.4.3.1.1.3 *Reserved symbol.* The third segment of the training sequence shall consist of the single symbol representing 000.

Note — This field is reserved for future definition.

7.6.4.3.1.1.4 *Transmission length.* To allow the receiver to determine the length of the final Reed-Solomon block, the transmitter shall send a 17-bit word, from least significant bit (lsb) to most significant bit (msb), indicating the total number of data bits that follow the header FEC.

Note - The length does not include those bits transmitted for: the Reed Solomon FEC, extra bits padded to ensure that the interleaver generates an integral number of 8-bit words, or the extra bi ts padd ed t o ensure t hat t he da ta e ncoder ge nerates an integral num ber of 3 -bit symbols.

7.6.4.3.1.1.5 *Header FEC.* To correct bit errors in the header, a (25, 20) block code shall be computed over the reserved symbol and the transmission length segments. The block code shall be transmitted as the fifth segment. The encoder shall accept the header in the bit

sequence that is being transmitted. The five parity bits to be transmitted shall be generated using the following equation:

$$[P_1 , \ldots , P_5] = [R_1 , \ldots , R_3 , TL_1 , \ldots , TL_{17}] \, H^T$$

where:

P   is the parity symbol (P_1 shall be transmitted first);
R   is the reserved symbol;
TL is the transmission Length symbol;
^{T} is the matrix transpose function; and
H   is the parity matrix defined below:

$$H = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

7.6.4.3.1.1.6   *Bit transmission order*. The five parity bits of the resultant vector product shall be transmitted from the left bit first.

7.6.4.3.1.2   *Forward error correction*. In order to improve the effective channel throughput by reducing the number of required retransmissions, FEC shall be applied after the training sequence, regardless of frame boundaries.

7.6.4.3.1.2.1   *FEC ca lculation*. The FEC coding shall be accomplished by means of a systematic fixed-length Reed-Solomon (RS)(255,249) 2^8-ary code.

Note 1 - This code is capable of correcting up to three octets for data blocks of 249 octets (1992 bits). Longer transmissions must be divided up into 1992 bit transmissions and shorter transmissions must be extended by virtual fill with trailing zeros. Six RS-check octets are appended for a total block of 255 octets.

The field defining the primitive polynomial of the code shall be as follows:

$$p(x) = (x^8 + x^7 + x^2 + x + 1)$$

The generator polynomial shall be as follows:

$$\prod_{i=120}^{125} (x - \alpha^i)$$

where:

α   is a primitive element of GF(256);
GF(256)   is a Galois field (GF) of size 256.

Note 2 — The Reed-Solomon codes are described in the Recommendation for Space Data System Standards Telemetry Channel Coding, by the Consultative Committee for Space Data Systems (see the Appendix to this chapter).

7.6.4.3.1.2.2   *Block lengths*. The six RS-check octets shall be calculated on blocks of 249 octets. Longer transmissions shall be split into blocks of 249 octets, per 7.6.4.3.1.3. Blocks of shorter length shall be extended to 249 octets by a virtual fill of trailing zeros. The virtual fill shall not be transmitted. Blocks shall be coded according to 7.6.4.3.1.2.3 through 7.6.4.3.1.2.3.3.

7.6.4.3.1.2.3 *No error correction*. For blocks with 2 or fewer non-fill octets, no error correction shall be used.

7.6.4.3.1.2.3.1 *Single-byte error correction*. For blocks with 3 to 30 non-fill octets, all six RS-check octets shall be generated, but only the first two shall be transmitted. The last four RS-check octets shall be treated as erasures at the decoder.

7.6.4.3.1.2.3.2 *Two-byte error correction*. For blocks with 31 to 67 non-fill octets, all six RS-check octets shall be generated, but only the first four shall be transmitted. The last two RS-check octets shall be treated as erasures at the decoder.

7.6.4.3.1.2.3.3 *Three-byte error correction*. For blocks with 68 or more non-fill octets, all six RS-check octets shall be generated and transmitted.

7.6.4.3.1.3 *Interleaving*. To improve the performance of the FEC, an octet-based table-driven interleaver shall be used. The interleaver shall create a table having 255 octets per row and c rows, where

$$c = \frac{transmission\ length\ (bits)}{1992\ (bits)}$$

where:
   a) the transmission length is as defined in 7.6.4.3.1.1.5; and
   b) c = the smallest integer greater than or equal to the value of the fraction.

After extending the data to an even multiple of 1992 bits, the interleaver shall write the transmission stream into the first 249 octets of each row by taking each consecutive group of eight bits and storing them from the first column to the 249th. The first bit in each group of eight bits shall be stored in the eighth bit position; the first group of 1992 bits shall be stored in the first row, the second group of 1992 bits in the second row, etc. After the FEC is computed on each row, the FEC data (or erasures) shall be stored in columns 250 through 255. The interleaver shall then pass the data to the scrambler by reading out column by column, skipping any octet which contains erasures or all fill bits. All of the bits in an octet shall be transmitted from bit 8 to bit 1.

On reception, the de-interleaver shall calculate the number of rows and size of the last (potentially partial) row from the length field in the header. It shall only pass valid data bytes to the higher layer.

7.6.4.3.1.4 *Bit scrambling*. To aid clock recovery and to stabilize the shape of the transmitted spectrum, bit scrambling shall be applied. The pseudo noise (PN) sequence shall be a 15-stage generator (see Figure 7.6-2 at the end of this Chapter) with the characteristic polynomial:

$$X^{15} + X + 1$$

The PN-sequence shall start after the frame synchronization pattern with the initial value 1101 0010 1011 001 with the left-most bit in the first stage of the register as per Figure 7.6-2 at the end of Chapter 7.6. After processing each bit, the register shall be shifted one bit to the right. For possible encryption in the future this initial value shall be programmed. The sequence shall be added (modulo 2) to the data at the transmit side (scrambling) and to the scrambled data at the receive side (descrambling) per Table 7.6-3 at the end of Chapter 7.6.

7.6.4.3.2 MODE 2 CHANNEL SENSING

7.6.4.3.2.1 *Channel busy to idle detection*. When a station receives on-channel power of at least -87 dBm for at least 5 milliseconds, then:

   a) with a likelihood of 0.9, it shall continue to consider the channel occupied if the signal

level is attenuated to below -92 dBm for less than 1 millisecond; and

b) with a likelihood of 0.9, it shall consider the channel unoccupied if the signal level is attenuated to below -92 dBm for at least 1.5 milliseconds.

Note - The m aximum l ink throughput a vailable t o a ll u sers i s h ighly s ensitive to t he RF channel s ense delay (from t he t ime w hen the ch annel a ctually ch anges s tate u ntil a s tation detects and acts on that change) and RF channel seizure delay (from the time when a station decides to transmit until the transmitter is sufficiently ramped up to lock out other stations). Accordingly, it is imperative that all efforts are made to reduce those times as the state-of-the-art advances.

7.6.4.3.2.2 *Channel idle to busy detection*. With a likelihood of at least 0.9, a station shall consider the channel occupied within 1 millisecond after on-channel power rises to at least -90 dBm.

7.6.4.3.2.3 The detection of an occupied channel shall occur within 0.5 milliseconds.

Note — A higher probability of false alarm is acceptable on the idle to busy detection than the busy to idle detection because of the effects of the two different errors.

7.6.4.3.3 MODE 2 RECEIVER/TRANSMITTER INTERACTION

7.6.4.3.3.1 *Receiver t o transmitter t urnaround t ime*. A station shall transmit the training sequence such that the centre of the first symbol of the unique word will be transmitted within 1.25 milliseconds after the result of an access attempt is successful (see Figure 7.6-3 at the end of this Chapter). The total frequency change during the transmission of the unique word shall be less than 10 Hz. After transmission of the unique word, the phase acceleration shall be less than 500 Hz per second.

7.6.4.3.3.2 *Transmitter t o receiver turnaround time*. The transmitter power shall be -20 dBc within 2.5 symbol periods of the middle of the final symbol of the burst. The transmitter power leakage when the transmitter is in the "off" state shall be less than -83 dBm. A station shall be capable of receiving and demodulating with nominal performance, an incoming signal within 1.5 milliseconds after transmission of the final information symbol.

Note - Reference DO-160D section 21, category H for antenna radiated signals.

7.6.4.3.4 MODE 2 PHYSICAL LAYER SYSTEM PARAMETERS

7.6.4.3.4.1 The physical layer shall implement the system parameters as defined in Table 7.6-4 at the end of this Chapter.

7.6.4.3.4.1.1 *Parameter P1 (minimum transmission l ength)*. Parameter P1 defines the minimum transmission length that a receiver shall be capable of demodulating without degradation of BER.

7.6.4.4 **Mode 3 specific physical layer**

Note - The M ode 3 s pecific p hysical l ayer s pecification i ncludes a d escription o f M ode 3 management (M) bur st and handof f c heck m essage (H) bu rst upl ink, M bur st downlink, voice/data (V/D) burst, and bit scrambling.

7.6.4.4.1 *Management (M) burst and handoff check message (H) burst uplink*. The M uplink burst (as contained in the Manual on VDL Mode 3 Technical Specifications) shall consist of three segments, the training sequence followed by the system data and the transmitter ramp down. The H uplink burst (as contained in the Manual on VDL Mode 3 Technical Specifications) shall consist of three segments, the training sequence followed by the handoff check message and the transmitter ramp down.

7.6.4.4.1.1 *Training sequence.* Uplink M burst and H burst training sequences shall consist of two components as follows:

a) transmitter ramp up and power stabilization; and
b) synchronization and ambiguity resolution.

7.6.4.4.1.1.1 *Transmitter ra mp-up and power s tabilization.* This shall be as defined in 7.6.4.3.1.1.1.

7.6.4.4.1.1.2 *Synchronization and am biguity r esolution.* The second component of the training sequence shall consist of the synchronization sequence, known as S_2, as follows:

$$000\ 001\ 101\ 100\ 110\ 010\ 111\ 100\ 010\ 011\ 101\ 000\ 111\ 000\ 011\ 001$$

and shall be transmitted from left to right.

Note - The sequence S_2 is very closely related to the sequence S_2 (Section 7.6.4.4.3.1.2). The 15 phase changes between the 16 s ymbols of S_2 are each exactly 180º out of phase from the 15 phase changes associated with S_2. This relationship can be used to simplify the process of simultaneously searching for both sequences.

7.6.4.4.1.2 *System data and handoff check message.* The non-3T configuration (as contained in the Manual on VDL Mode 3 Technical Specifications) system data shall consist of 32 transmitted symbols. The 96 transmitted bits shall include 48 bits of information and 48 parity bits, generated as 4 Golay (24, 12) code words. The 3T configuration as contained in the Manual on VDL Mode 3 Technical Specifications shall consist of 128 transmitted symbols. The 384 transmitted bits shall include 192 bits of information and 192 parity bits, generated as 16 Golay (24, 12) code words. The 3T configuration handoff check message shall consist of 40 transmitted symbols. The 120 transmitted bits shall include 60 bits of information and 60 parity bits, generated as 5 Golay (24, 12) code words.

The specific definition of the Golay encoder shall be as follows:

If the 12 bit input bit sequence is written as a row vector x, then the 24 bit output sequence can be written as the row vector y, where y = x G, and the matrix G shall be given by

$$G = \begin{bmatrix}
1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\
1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1
\end{bmatrix}$$

Note - The extended Golay code allows for the correction of any error pattern with 3 or fewer bit errors and the detection of any 4-bit error pattern.

7.6.4.4.1.3 *Transmitter ra mp-down.* The transmitter power shall be -20 dBc within 2.5 symbol periods of the middle of the final symbol of the burst. The transmitter power leakage when the transmitter is in the "off" state shall be less than -83 dBm.

Note - Reference RTCA/DO-160D section 21, category H for antenna radiated signals.

7.6.4.4.2 *Management (M) burst downlink*. The M downlink burst (as contained in the Manual on VDL Mode 3 Technical Specifications) shall consist of three segments, the training sequence followed by the system data and the transmitter ramp down.

7.6.4.4.2.1 *Training sequence*. The M downlink burst training sequence shall consist of two components as follows:

  a) transmitter ramp up and power stabilization; and
  b) synchronization and ambiguity resolution.

7.6.4.4.2.1.1 *Transmitter ramp-up and power stabilization*. This shall be as defined in 7.6.4.4.1.1.1.

7.6.4.4.2.1.2 *Synchronization and ambiguity resolution*. Three separate synchronization sequences shall be used for this burst type. The standard sequence, known as S_1, shall be as follows:

    000 111 001 001 010 110 000 011 100 110 011 111 010 101 100 101

and shall be transmitted from left to right. The special sequence used to identify poll responses shall be as defined in 7.6.4.4.1.1.2.

The special sequence used to identify net entry requests (S_1) shall use the following sequence:

    000 001 111 111 100 000 110 101 010 000 101 001 100 011 010 011

and shall be transmitted from left to right.

Note - The sequence S_1 is very closely related to the sequence S_1. The 15 phase changes between the 16 symbols of S_1 are each exactly 180° out of phase from the 15 phase changes associated with S_1. This relationship can be used to simplify the process of simultaneously searching for both sequences.

7.6.4.4.2.2 *System data*. The system data segment shall consist of 16 transmitted symbols. The 48 transmitted bits shall be encoded as 24 bits of system data and 24 bits of parity bits generated as two consecutive (24, 12) Golay code words. The encoding of the (24, 12) Golay code words should be as defined in 7.6.4.4.1.2.

7.6.4.4.2.3 *Transmitter ramp-down*. This shall be as defined in 7.6.4.4.1.3.

7.6.4.4.3 *Voice or data (V/D) burst*. The V/D burst (as contained in the Manual on VDL Mode 3 Technical Specifications) shall consist of four segments: the training sequence followed by the header, the user information segment and the transmitter ramp down. The same V/D burst format shall be used for both uplink and downlink.

7.6.4.4.3.1 *Training sequence*. V/D burst training sequence shall consist of two components as follows:

a) transmitter ramp-up and power stabilization; and
b) synchronization and ambiguity resolution.

7.6.4.4.3.1.1 *Transmitter ramp-up and power stabilization*. This shall be as specified in 7.6.4.4.1.1.1.

7.6.4.4.3.1.2 *Synchronization and ambiguity resolution*. The second component of the training sequence shall consist of the synchronization sequence, known as S_2, as follows:

    000 111 011 010 000 100 001 010 100 101 011 110 001 110 101 111

and shall be transmitted from left to right.

7.6.4.4.3.2 *Header*. The header segment shall consist of 8 transmitted symbols. The 24 transmitted bits shall be encoded as 12 bits of header information and 12 parity bits, generated as a single (24, 12) Golay code word. The encoding of the (24, 12) Golay code word shall be as defined in 7.6.4.4.1.2.

7.6.4.4.3.3 *User i nformation*. The user information segment shall consist of 192 3-bit symbols. When transmitting voice, FEC shall be applied to the analysis output of the vocoder specified in 7.6.8. The vocoder shall provide satisfactory performance in a BER environment of 10^{-3} (with a design goal of 10^{-2}). The overall bit rate of the vocoder including FEC is 4 800 bits/s (except when in the truncated mode in which the bit rate is 4 000 bits/s).

7.6.4.4.3.3.1 When transmitting user data, the 576 bits shall be encoded as a single Reed-Solomon (72, 62) 2^8-ary code word. For user data input to the Reed-Solomon encoder of length less than 496 bits, input data shall be padded with zeroes at the end to a full length of 496 bits. The field defining the primitive polynomial of the code shall be as described in 7.6.4.3.1.2.1. The generator polynomial shall be as follows:

$$\prod_{i=120}^{129} (x - \alpha^i)$$

Note — The Reed -Solomon (72, 62) c ode i s c apable of c orrecting up t o five 2^8-ary (code word) symbol errors in the received word.

7.6.4.4.3.4 *Transmitter ramp-down*. This shall be as defined in 7.6.4.4.1.3.

7.6.4.4.4 *Interleaving*. There shall be no interleaving in Mode 3 operation.

7.6.4.4.5 *Bit scrambling*. Under Mode 3 operation, bit scrambling, as specified in 7.6.4.3.1.4 shall be performed on each burst, starting after the training sequence. The scrambling sequence shall be reinitialized on each burst effectively providing a constant overlay for each of the Mode 3 fixed length bursts.

7.6.4.4.6 *Receiver/transmitter i nteraction*. The switching times in this subsection will be defined as the time between the middle of the last information symbol of one burst and the middle of the first symbol of the synchronization sequence of the subsequent burst.

Note - This nominal time will be shortened by considerations such as the finite width of each symbol due to N yquist filtering and t he r amp up and pow er s tabilization s equence. Su ch alternative definitions could yield switching times up to 8 symbol periods shorter.

7.6.4.4.6.1 *Receiver t o t ransmitter s witching t ime*. An aircraft radio shall be capable of switching from reception to transmission within 17 symbol periods. This time can be relaxed to 33 symbol periods for aircraft radios which do not implement functions requiring discrete addressing.

Note 1 - The shortest R/T switching time for an aircraft radio occurs when the reception of an uplink M ch annel b eacon i s f ollowed b y a V/D t ransmission i n t he s ame s lot. In cer tain instances where aircraft radios do not implement functions requiring discrete addressing, the R/T switching time can be increased since the last two Golay words of the uplink M channel beacon need not be read.

Note 2 - The minimum turnaround time assumes that in configurations 3V1D, 2V1D, and 3 T (as contained i n Se ction 7.5.5.2.4 of the Manual on V DL Mode 3 Technical Specifications), the aircraft radios will be provided with software that will prevent them from transmitting a downlink M channel m essage i n a s lot following the r eception of a v oice m essage f rom another aircraft with a long time delay.

7.6.4.4.6.2 *Transmitter to receiver switching time*. An aircraft radio shall be capable of switching from transmission to reception within 32 symbol periods.

Note - The worst case T/R switching time for an aircraft radio occurs when it transmits a downlink M channel message and receives a V/D message in the same slot.

7.6.4.4.7 *Fringe coverage indication.*

7.6.4.4.7.1 Indication of near edge-of-coverage shall be provided to the VDL Mode 3 aircraft.

7.6.5 LINK LAYER PROTOCOLS AND SERVICES

7.6.5.1 General information

7.6.5.1.1 *Functionality*. The VDL link layer shall provide the following sublayer functions:

a) media access control (MAC) sublayer, which requires the use of the carrier sense multiple access (CSMA) algorithm for Mode 2 or TDMA for Mode 3;
b) a data link service (DLS) sublayer:
1) for Mode 2, the DLS sublayer provides connection-oriented point-to-point links using data link entities (DLE) and connectionless broadcast link over the MAC sublayer; and
2) for Mode 3, the DLS sublayer Provides acknowledged connectionless point-to-point

and point-to-multipoint links over a MAC sublayer that guarantees sequencing; and
c) a VDL management entity (VME), which establishes and maintains DLEs between the aircraft and the ground-based systems using link management entities (LME).

7.6.5.1.2 SERVICE

7.6.5.1.2.1 *Connection-oriented*. The VDL Mode 2 link layer shall provide a reliable point-to-point service using a connection-oriented DLS sublayer.

7.6.5.1.2.2 *Connectionless*. The VDL Mode 2 and 3 link layers shall provide an unacknowledged broadcast service using a connectionless DLS sublayer.

7.6.5.1.2.3 *Acknowledged connectionless*. The VDL Mode 3 link layer shall provide an acknowledged point-to-point service using a connectionless DLS sublayer that relies upon the MAC sublayer to guarantee sequencing.

7.6.5.2 MAC sublayer

7.6.5.2.1 The MAC sublayer shall provide for the transparent acquisition of the shared communications path. It makes invisible to the DLS sublayer the way in which supporting communications resources are utilized to achieve this.

Note - Specific MAC services and procedures for VDL Modes 2 and 3 are contained in the Manuals on VDL Mode 2 and VDL Mode 3 Technical Specifications.

7.6.5.3 Data link service sublayer

7.6.5.3.1 For Mode 2, the DLS shall support bit-oriented simplex air-ground communications using the aviation VHF link control (AVLC) protocol.

Note - Specific data link services, parameters and protocol definitions for VDL Mode 2 are contained in the Manual on VDL Mode 2 Technical Specifications.

7.6.5.3.2 For Mode 3, the DLS shall support bit-oriented, priority based, simplex air-ground communications using the acknowledged connectionless data link (A-CLDL) protocol.

Note - Specific data link services, parameters and protocol definitions for VDL Mode 3 are contained in the Manual on VDL Mode 3 Technical Specifications.

7.6.5.4 VDL management entity

7.6.5.4.1 *Services*. The VME shall provide link establishment, maintenance and disconnection services as well as support parameter modification. Specific VME services, parameter formats and procedures for Modes 2 and 3 are contained in the Manuals on VDL Mode 2 and Mode 3 Technical Specifications.

7.6.6 SUBNETWORK LAYER PROTOCOLS AND SERVICES

7.6.6.1 Architecture for Mode 2

7.6.6.1.1 The subnetwork layer protocol used across the VHF air-ground subnetwork for VDL Mode 2 is referred to formally as a subnetwork access protocol (SNAcP) and shall conform to ISO 8208, except as contained in the Manual on VDL Mode 2 Technical Specifications. The SNAcP is contained within the Manual on VDL Mode 2 Technical Specifications as the subnetwork protocol. If there are any differences between the Manual on VDL Mode 2 Technical Specifications and the cited specifications, the Manual on VDL Mode 2 Technical Specifications shall have precedence. On the air-ground interface, the aircraft subnetwork entity shall act as a DTE and the ground subnetwork entity shall act as a DCE.

Note - Specific subnetwork layer protocol access points, services, packet formats, parameters and procedures for VDL Mode 2 are contained in the Manual on VDL Mode 2 Technical Specifications.

7.6.6.2 Architecture for Mode 3

7.6.6.2.1 The subnetwork layer used across the VHF air-ground subnetwork for VDL Mode 3 provides the flexibility to simultaneously support multiple subnetwork protocols. The currently defined options are to support ISO 8473 connectionless network protocol and to support ISO 8208, both as contained in the Manual on VDL Mode 3 Technical Specifications. The Manual on VDL Mode 3 Technical Specifications shall have precedence with respect to any differences with the cited specifications. For the ISO 8208 interface, both the air and ground subnetwork entities shall act as DCEs.

Note - Specific subnetwork layer protocol access points, services, packet formats, parameters and procedures for VDL Mode 3 are contained in the Manual on VDL Mode 3 Technical Specifications.

7.6.7 THE VDL MOBILE SUBNETWORK DEPENDENT CONVERGENCE FUNCTION (SNDCF)

7.6.7.1 VDL Mode 2 SNDCF

7.6.7.1.1 *Introduction*. The VDL Mode 2 mobile SNDCF shall be the standard mobile SNDCF.

7.6.7.1.2 *New function*. The VDL Mode 2 mobile SNDCF shall support maintaining context (e.g. compression tables) across subnetwork calls. The SNDCF shall use the same context (e.g. compression tables) across all SVCs negotiated to a DTE, when negotiated with the same parameters. The SNDCF shall support at least 2 SVCs sharing a context.

Note 1 - Because handoffs can be expected to reorder packets, certain compression algorithms do not lend themselves to use over VDL Mode 2. Further, implementors of

dictionary-based compression algorithms must be sensitive to the problem of updates arriving on either the old or newly established call.

Note 2 - The encoding of the Call User Data field is described in Doc 9705 except with modifications as contained in the Manual on VDL Mode 2 Technical Specifications.

7.6.7.2   VDL Mode 3 SNDCF

7.6.7.2.1 The VDL Mode 3 shall support one or more of the defined SNDCFs. The first is the standard ISO 8208 SNDCF as defined in Doc 9705. This is a connection-oriented SNDCF. The second type of SNDCF supported by VDL Mode 3 is denoted frame-based SNDCF. The details of this connectionless oriented SNDCF are contained in the Manual on VDL Mode 3 Technical Specifications, including network layer interface, support for broadcast and unicast network packets, and ATN router support.

Note - The framed-based SNDCF is termed such because it uses the VDL Mode 3 frames without the need for an additional protocol (viz. ISO 8208 SNDCF) to transfer network packets. The frame-based SNDCF achieves independence from the network protocol by identifying the payload of each frame. Upon receipt of a frame, the payload is examined and control is passed to the protocol identified.

7.6.8   VOICE UNIT FOR MODE 3

7.6.8.1   Services

7.6.8.1.1 The voice unit shall provide for a simplex, "push-to-talk" audio and signalling interface between the user and the VDL. Two separate mutually exclusive voice circuit types shall be supported:

   a)   Dedicated circuits: This shall provide service to a specific user group on an exclusive basis with no sharing of the circuit with other users outside the group. Access shall be based on a "listen-before-push-to-talk" discipline.

   b)   Demand assigned circuits: This shall provide voice circuit access which is arbitrated by

   the ground station in response to an access request received from the aircraft station. This type of operation shall allow dynamic sharing of the channel resource increasing trunking efficiency.

7.6.8.1.2 *Priority access*. The voice unit operation shall support a priority override access for authorized ground users.

7.6.8.1.3 *Message source identification*. The voice unit operation shall support notification to the user of the source of a received message (i.e. whether the message originated from an air or ground station).

7.6.8.1.4   *Coded squelch*. The voice unit shall support a coded squelch operation that offers some degree of rejection of undesired co-channel voice messages based on the burst time of arrival.

7.6.8.2 Speech encoding, parameters and procedures

7.6.8.2.1 The VDL Mode 3 shall use the advanced multiband excitation (AMBE) 4.8 kbits/s encoding/decoding algorithm, version number AMBE-ATC-10, developed by Digital Voice Systems, Incorporated (DVSI) for voice communications.

Note 1 - Information on technical characteristics of the 4.8 kbits/s AMBE algorithm is contained in AMBE-ATC-10 Low Level Description, obtainable from DVSI.

Note 2 - The 4.8 kbits/s AMBE encoding/decoding technology described in the document is subject t o D VSI p atent r ights a nd co pyrights. M anufacturers m ust en ter i nto a l icense agreement w ith DVSI pr ior t o obt aining a de tailed de scription of t he a lgorithm be fore incorporation in equipment operating in the VDL Mode 3 service. By letter to ICAO dated 29 October 1999, DVSI confirmed its commitment to license the technology for the manufacture and sale of aeronautical equipment under reasonable terms and c onditions, negotiated on a non-discriminatory basis.

7.6.8.2.2 Speech encoding definition, voice unit parameters, and procedure descriptions for VDL Mode 3 Voice Unit operation are contained in the Manual on VDL Mode 3 Technical Specifications.

7.6.9 VDL MODE 4

7.6.9.1 A Mode 4 station shall conform to the requirements defined in 7.6.1.2.3, 7.6.1.4.2, 7.6.2.1.1, 7.6.2.3.1, 7.6.2.4, 7.6.3.1, 7.6.3.3.1, 7.6.3.4, 7.6.3.5.1, 7.6.3.5.2, 7.6.3.5.3, 7.6.3.5.4.1 and 7.6.9.

7.6.9.2 VDL Mode 4 radio channels

7.6.9.2.1 VDL MODE 4 STATION FREQUENCY RANGE

7.6.9.2.1.1 *Transmitter/receiver tuning range.* A VDL Mode 4 transmitter/receiver shall be capable of tuning to any of the 25 kHz channels from 117.975 MHz through 137 MHz. The transmitter shall have a means for the tuning range to be restricted to a narrower range.

Note - Operational c onditions or c ertain appl ications m ay r equire t he equipment t o be operated in a narrower frequency range.

7.6.9.2.1.2 A VDL Mode 4 transmitter/receiver shall be capable of tuning to any of the 25 kHz channels from 108 to 117.975 MHz.

Note. — The band 108 –117.975 MH z may be ut ilized i n ac cordance wi th t he r elevant provisions of the ITU Radio Regulations.

7.6.9.2.1.3 Simultaneous reception. A VDL Mode 4 station shall be capable of receiving two channels simultaneously.

7.6.9.2.1.4 A VDL Mode 4 station shall be capable of receiving additional channels simultaneously as required by operational services.

7.6.9.2.2 GLOBAL SIGNALLING CHANNELS

7.6.9.2.2.1 VDL Mode 4 stations shall use two assigned frequencies as global signalling channels (GSC), to support user communications and link management functions.

Note - Additional c hannels may be defined in a l ocal domain and notified to mobile users by broadcast from ground stations on the GSCs defined above.

7.6.9.3 System capabilities

7.6.9.3.1 *ATN co mpatibility.* The VDL Mode 4 system shall support ATN/IPS-compliant subnetwork services for surveillance applications.

Note. — VDL Mode 4 pr ovides a s eamless t ransfer of dat a be tween ATN/IPS gr ound networks and A TN/IPS ai rcraft ne tworks. Int eroperability wi th A TN/OSI ne tworks, whe re required, i s expected t o be ar ranged pr ior t o implementation. V DL Modes 2 and 3 pr ovide ATN/OSI-compliant subnetworks

7.6.9.3.2 *Data t ransparency*. The VDL Mode 4 system shall provide code-independent, byte-independent transfer of data.

7.6.9.3.3 *Broadcast*. The VDL Mode 4 system shall provide link layer broadcast services.

7.6.9.3.4 *Point-to-point*. The VDL Mode 4 system shall provide link layer point-to-point services.

7.6.9.3.5 *Air-air c ommunications*. The VDL Mode 4 system shall provide air-air communications, without ground support, as well as air-ground communications.

7.6.9.3.6 *Connection management*. When supporting air-ground operations, the VDL Mode 4 system shall establish and maintain a reliable communications path between the aircraft and the ground system while allowing, but not requiring, manual intervention.

7.6.9.3.7 *Ground ne twork t ransition*. A mobile VDL Mode 4 DLS station shall transition from one ground VDL Mode 4 DLS station to another as required.

7.6.9.3.8 *Derived time capability*. VDL Mode 4 shall provide the capability for deriving time from time-of-arrival measurements of received VDL Mode 4 transmissions whenever externally derived estimates of time are unavailable.

7.6.9.3.9 *Simplex o perations*. Mobile and ground VDL Mode 4 stations shall access the physical medium operating in simplex mode.

7.6.9.4 Coordination of channel utilization

7.6.9.4.1 On a regional basis, transmissions shall be scheduled relative to UTC, to ensure efficient use of shared channels and to avoid unintentional slot re-use.

7.6.9.5 Physical layer protocols and services

Note - Unless otherwise stated, the requirements defined in this section apply to both mobile and ground stations.

7.6.9.5.1 FUNCTIONS

7.6.9.5.1.1 *TRANSMITTED POWER*

7.6.9.5.1.1.1 *Airborne installation*. The effective radiated power shall be such as to provide a field strength of at least 35 microvolts per metre (minus 114.5 dBW/m^2) on the basis of free space propagation, at ranges and altitudes appropriate to the conditions pertaining to the areas over which the aircraft is operated.

7.6.9.5.1.1.2 *Ground i nstallation*. The effective radiated power shall be such as to provide a field strength of at least 75 microvolts per metre (minus 109 dBW/m^2) within the defined operational coverage of the facility, on the basis of free-space propagation.

7.6.9.5.1.2 *TRANSMITTER AND RECEIVER FREQUENCY CONTROL*

7.6.9.5.1.2.1 The VDL Mode 4 physical layer shall set the transmitter or receiver frequency as commanded by the link management entity (LME). Channel selection time shall be less than 13 ms after the receipt of a command from a VSS user.

7.6.9.5.1.3 *DATA RECEPTION BY RECEIVER*

7.6.9.5.1.3.1 The receiver shall decode input signals and forward them to the higher layers for processing.

7.6.9.5.1.4 *DATA TRANSMISSION BY TRANSMITTER*

7.6.9.5.1.4.1m *Data e ncoding and t ransmission*. The physical layer shall encode the data received from the data link layer and transmit it over the RF channel. RF transmission shall take place only when permitted by the MAC.

7.6.9.5.1.4.2 *Order of transmission*. The transmission shall consist of the following stages in the following order:

a) transmitter power stabilization;
b) bit synchronization;
c) ambiguity resolution and data transmission; and
d) transmitter decay.

Note - The definitions of the stages are given in Sections 7.6.9.5.2.3.1 to 7.6.9.5.2.3.4.

7.6.9.5.1.4.3   Automatic transmitter shutdown. A VDL Mode 4 station shall automatically shut-down power to any final stage amplifier in the event that output power from that amplifier exceeds -30 dBm for more than 1 second. Reset to an operational mode for the affected amplifier shall require a manual operation.

Note - This is i ntended to pr otect the shared c hannel r esource agai nst s o-called " stuck transmitters".

7.6.9.5.1.5   *NOTIFICATION SERVICES*

7.6.9.5.1.5.1 *Signal quality*. The operational parameters of the equipment shall be monitored at the physical layer. Signal quality analysis shall be performed in the demodulator process and in the receive process.

Note - Processes t hat m ay b e evaluated i n t he d emodulator i nclude b it er ror r ate (BER), signal to noise ratio (SNR), and timing jitter. Processes that may be evaluated in the receiver include received signal level and group delay.

7.6.9.5.1.5.2 *Arrival time*. The arrival time of each received transmission shall be measured with a two-sigma error of 5 microseconds.

7.6.9.5.1.5.3 The receiver shall be capable of measuring the arrival time within a two-sigma error of 1 microsecond.

7.6.9.5.2 PROTOCOL DEFINITION FOR GFSK

7.6.9.5.2.1 *Modulation s cheme*. The modulation scheme shall be GFSK. The first bit transmitted (in the training sequence) shall be a high tone and the transmitted tone shall be toggled before transmitting a 0 (i.e. non-return to zero inverted encoding).

7.6.9.5.2.2   *Modulation r ate*. Binary ones and binary zeros shall be generated with a modulation index of 0.25 ± 0.03 and a BT product of 0.28 ± 0.03, producing data transmission at a bit rate of 19 200 bits/s ± 50 ppm.

7.6.9.5.2.3   *STAGES OF TRANSMISSION*

7.6.9.5.2.3.1 *Transmitter power stabilization*. The first segment of the training sequence is the transmitter power stabilization, which shall have a duration of 16 symbol periods. The transmitter power level shall be no less than 90 per cent of the steady state power level at the end of the transmitter power stabilization segment.

7.6.9.5.2.3.2 *Bit s ynchronization*. The second segment of the training sequence shall be the 24-bit binary sequence 0101 0101 0101 0101 0101 0101, transmitted from left to right immediately before the start of the data segment.

7.6.9.5.2.3.3 *Ambiguity resolution and data transmission.* The transmission of the first bit of data shall start 40 bit intervals (approximately 2 083.3 microseconds) ± 1 microsecond after the nominal start of transmission.

Note 1 - This is referenced to emissions at the output of the antenna.

Note 2 - Ambiguity resolution is performed by the link layer.

7.6.9.5.2.3.4 *Transmitter decay.* The transmitted power level shall decay at least by 20 dB within 300 microseconds after completing a transmission. The transmitter power level shall be less than -90 dBm within 832 microseconds after completing a transmission.

7.6.9.5.3 CHANNEL SENSING

7.6.9.5.3.1 *Estimation of noise floor.* A VDL Mode 4 station shall estimate the noise floor based on power measurements of the channel whenever a valid training sequence has not been detected.

7.6.9.5.3.2 The algorithm used to estimate the noise floor shall be such that the estimated noise floor shall be lower than the maximum power value measured on the channel over the last minute when the channel is regarded as idle.

Note - The VDL Mode 4 receiver uses an energy sensing algorithm as one of the means to determine the state of the channel (idle or busy). One algorithm that can be used to estimate the noise floor is described in the Manual on VHF Digital Link (VDL) Mode 4 (Doc 9816).

7.6.9.5.3.3 *Channel idle to busy detection.* A VDL Mode 4 station shall employ the following means to determine the channel idle to busy transition at the physical layer.

7.6.9.5.3.3.1 *Detection of a training sequence.* The channel shall be declared busy if a VDL Mode 4 station detects a valid training sequence followed by a frame flag.

7.6.9.5.3.3.2 *Measurement of channel power.* Regardless of the ability of the demodulator to detect a valid training sequence, a VDL Mode 4 station shall consider the channel busy with at least a 95 per cent probability within 1 ms after on channel power rises to the equivalent of at least four times the estimated noise floor for at least 0.5 milliseconds.

7.6.9.5.3.4 *CHANNEL BUSY TO IDLE DETECTION*

7.6.9.5.3.4.1 A VDL Mode 4 station shall employ the following means to determine the channel busy to idle transition.

7.6.9.5.3.4.2 *Measurement of transmission length.* When the training sequence has been detected, the channel busy state shall be held for a period of time at least equal to 5 milliseconds, and subsequently allowed to transition to the idle state based on measurement of channel power.

7.6.9.5.3.4.3 *Measurement of channel power.* When not otherwise held in the channel busy state, a VDL Mode 4 station shall consider the channel idle with at least a 95 per cent probability if on-channel power falls below the equivalent of twice the estimated noise floor for at least 0.9 milliseconds.

7.6.9.5.4 RECEIVER/TRANSMITTER INTERACTION

7.6.9.5.4.1 *Receiver to transmitter turnaround time.* A VDL Mode 4 station shall be capable of beginning the transmission of the transmitter power stabilization sequence within 16 microseconds after terminating the receiver function.

7.6.9.5.4.2 *Frequency change during transmission.* The phase acceleration of the carrier from the start of the synchronization sequence to the data end flag shall be less than 300 Hz per second.

7.6.9.5.4.3 *Transmitter to receiver turnaround time.* A VDL Mode 4 station shall be capable of receiving and demodulating with nominal performance an incoming signal within 1 ms after completing a transmission.

Note - Nominal performance is defined as a bit error rate (BER) of 10^{-4}.

7.6.9.5.5 PHYSICAL LAYER SYSTEM PARAMETERS

7.6.9.5.5.1 PARAMETER P1 (MINIMUM TRANSMISSION LENGTH)

7.6.9.5.5.1.1 A receiver shall be capable of demodulating a transmission of minimum length P1 without degradation of BER.

7.6.9.5.5.1.2 The value of P1 shall be 19 200 bits.

7.6.9.5.5.2 *PARAMETER P2 (NOMINAL CO-CHANNEL INTERFERENCE PERFORMANCE)*

7.6.9.5.5.2.1 The parameter P2 shall be the nominal co-channel interference at which a receiver shall be capable of demodulating without degradation in BER.

7.6.9.5.5.2.2 The value of P2 shall be 12 dB.

7.6.9.5.6 FM BROADCAST INTERFERENCE IMMUNITY PERFORMANCE FOR VDL MODE 4 RECEIVING SYSTEMS

7.6.9.5.6.1 A VDL Mode 4 station shall conform to the requirements defined in section 7.6.3.5.4 when operating in the band 117.975-137 MHz.

7.6.9.5.6.2 A VDL Mode 4 station shall conform to the requirements defined below when operating in the band 108-117.975 MHz.

7.6.9.5.6.2.1 The VDL Mode 4 receiving system shall meet the requirements specified in 7.6.3.5.1 in the presence of two-signal, third-order intermodulation products caused by VHF FM broadcast signals having levels in accordance with the following:

$$2N_1 + N_2 + 72 \leq 0$$

for VHF FM sound broadcasting signals in the range 107.7-108.0 MHz and

$$2N_1 + N_2 + 3\left\{24 - 20\log\frac{\Delta f}{0.4}\right\} \leq 0$$

for VHF FM sound broadcasting signals below 107.7 MHz,

where the frequencies of the two VHF FM sound broadcasting signals produce, within the receiver, a two-signal, third-order intermodulation product on the desired VDL Mode 4 frequency.

N_1 and N_2 are the levels (dBm) of the two VHF FM sound broadcasting signals at the VDL Mode 4 receiver input. Neither level shall exceed the desensitization criteria set forth in 7.6.9.5.6.2.2.

$\Delta f = 108.1 - f_1$, where f_1 is the frequency of N_1, the VHF FM sound broadcasting signal closer to 108.1 MHz.

Note - The FM intermodulation immunity requirements are not applied to a VDL Mode 4 channel operating below 108.1 MHz, and hence frequencies below 108.1 MHz are not intended for general assignments.

7.6.9.5.6.2.2   The VDL Mode 4 receiving system shall not be desensitized in the presence of VHF FM broadcast signals having levels in accordance with Tables 7.6-5.

7.6.9.6   Link layer

Note - Details on link layer functions a re co ntained in t he Manual on VHF Digital Link (VDL) Mode 4 (Doc 9816).

7.6.9.7   Subnetwork layer and SNDCF

Note - Details on s ubnetwork layer functions and SND CF ar e c ontained in t he Manual on VHF Digital Link (VDL) Mode 4 (Doc 9816)

7.6.9.8   ADS-B applications

Note - Details on ADS-B application functions are contained in the Manual on VHF Digital Link (VDL) Mode 4 (Doc 9816)

Note - References to Standards from the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) are specified in the Appendix to Chapter 7.6 of CARANS Part 7. These ISO Standards shall apply to the extent specified in the SARPs.

TABLES FOR CAR-ANS 7.6

Table 7.6-1 Modes 2 and 3 data encoding

X_k	Y_k	Z_k	$\Delta\phi_k$
0	0	0	$0\,\pi/4$
0	0	1	$1\,\pi/4$
0	1	1	$2\,\pi/4$
0	1	0	$3\,\pi/4$
1	1	0	$4\,\pi/4$
1	1	1	$5\,\pi/4$
1	0	1	$6\,\pi/4$
1	0	0	$7\,\pi/4$

Table 7.6-2 Modes 2 and 3 modulation stability

VDL Mode	Aircraft Modulation Stability	Ground Modulation Stability
Mode 2	± 0.0050 per cent	± 0.0050 per cent
Mode 3	± 0.0005 per cent	± 0.0002 per cent

Table 7.6-3 Scrambler functions

Function	Data in	Data out
scrambling	clean data	scrambled data
descrambling	scrambled data	clean data

Table 7.6-4 Physical services system parameters

Symbol	Parameter name	Mode 2 value
P1	Minimum transmission length	131071 bits

Table 7.6-5 VDL Mode 4 operating on frequencies between 108.0–111.975 MHz

Frequency (Mhz)	Maximum level of unwanted signal at receiver input (dBm)
88-102	+ 15
104	+10
107	+5
107.9	0

Table 7.6-6 VDL Mode 4 operating on frequencies between 112.0–117.975 MHz

Frequency (Mhz)	Maximum level of unwanted signal at receiver input (dBm)
88-104	+ 15
106	+10
107	+5
107.9	0

Note – The relationship is linear between adjacent points designated by the above frequencies.

FIGURES FOR CAR-ANS 7.6
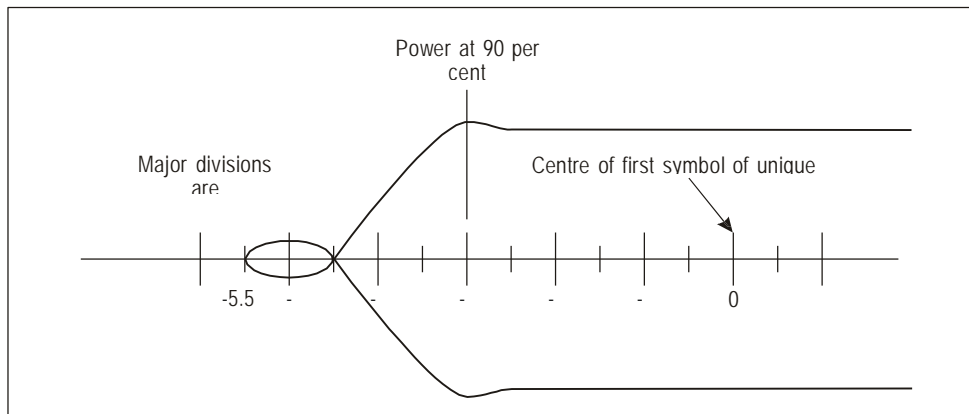
Figure 7.6-1 Transmitter power stabilization
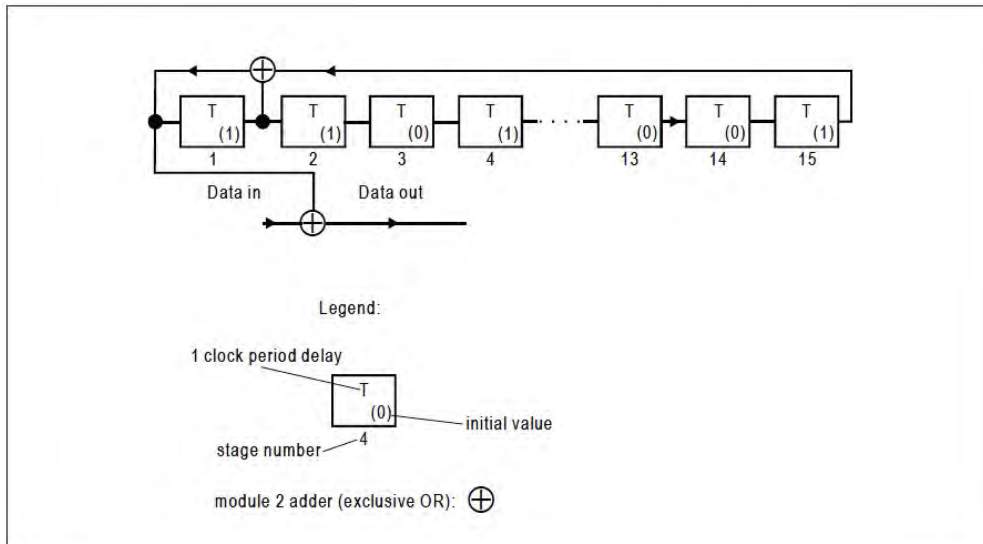
Figure 7.6-2 PN-generator for bit scrambling sequence
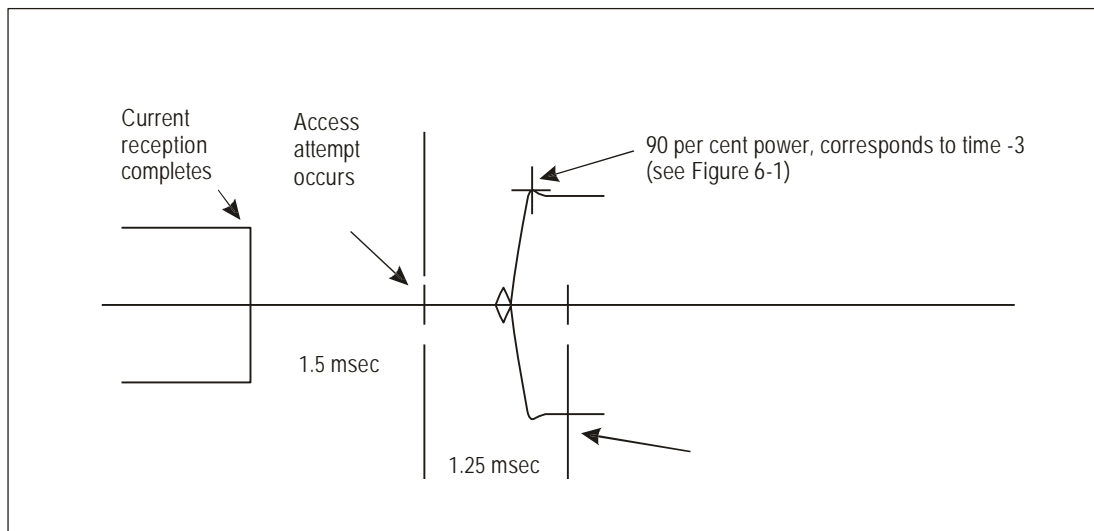
Figure 7.6-3 Receive to Transmit turnaround time

APPENDIX TO CAR-ANS 7.6
REFERENCES

1.   REFERENCES

References to Standards from the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) are as specified (including date published) below. These ISO Standards shall apply to the extent specified in the SARPs.

2.   NORMATIVE REFERENCES

These SARPs reference the following ISO documents:

ISO	Title	Date published
646	*Information technology — ISO 7-bit coded character set for information interchange*	12/91
3309	*HDLC Procedures — Frame Structure, Version 3*	12/93
4335	*HDLC Elements of Procedures*, Version 3	12/93

7498	*OSI Basic Reference Model, Version 1*	11/94
7809	*HDLC Procedures — Consolidation of Classes of Procedures, Version 1*	12/93
8208	*Information Processing Systems — Data Communications — X.25 Packet Level Protocol for Data Terminal Equipment*	3/90 2nd ed.
8885	*HDLC Procedures — General Purpose XID Frame Information Field Content and Format*, Version [1]	12/93
8886.3	*OSI Data Link Service Definition*, Version 3	6/92
10039	*Local Area Networks — MAC Service Definition*, Version 1	6/91

3. BACKGROUND REFERENCES

The following documents are listed as reference material.

Oriiginator	Title	Date published
ITU-R	Recommendation S.446.4, ICAO Annex I	
CCSDS	*Telemetry Channel Coding, Recommendation for Space Data System Standards*, Consultative Committee for Space Date Systems, CCSDS 101.0-B-3, Blue Book	5/92

7.7 SUBNETWORK INTERCONNECTION
(to be developed)

7.8 AFTN NETWORK

7.8.1 DEFINITIONS

Data signalling rate. Data signalling rate refers to the passage of information per unit of time, and is expressed in bits/second. Data signalling rate is given by the formula:

$$\sum_{i=1}^{i=m} \frac{1}{T_i} \log_2 n_i$$

where *m* is the number of parallel channels, T_i is the minimum interval for the *i*th channel expressed in seconds, n_i is the number of significant conditions of the modulation in the *i*th channel.

Note 1 -

a) *For a single channel (serial transmission) it reduces to $(1/T)\log_2 n$; with a two-condition modulation (n = 2), it is 1/T.*

b) *For a par allel t ransmission wi th e qual m inimum i ntervals and e qual num ber of significant c onditions on e ach c hannel, it i s m $(1/T)\log_2 n$ (m(1/T) i n c ase of a t wo-condition modulation).*

Note 2 — In t he a bove d efinition, t he term " parallel ch annels" i s i nterpreted t o m ean: channels, each of whi ch c arries an i ntegral par t of an i nformation un it, e .g. the par allel transmission of bi ts f orming a c haracter. In t he c ase of a c ircuit comprising a num ber of channels, e ach of whi ch c arries i nformation " independently", wi th t he s ole p urpose o f

119

increasing the traffic handling capacity, these channels are not to be regarded as parallel channels in the context of this definition.

Degree of standardized test distortion. The degree of distortion of the restitution measured during a specific period of time when the modulation is perfect and corresponds to a specific text.

. . .

Modulation rate. The reciprocal of the unit interval measured in seconds. This rate is expressed in bauds.

Note - Telegraph signals are characterized by intervals of time of duration equal to or longer than the shortest or unit interval. The modulation rate (formerly telegraph speed) is therefore expressed as the inverse of the value of this unit interval. If, for example, the unit interval is 20 milliseconds, the modulation rate is 50 bauds.

. . .

7.8.2 TECHNICAL PROVISIONS RELATING TO TELETYPEWRITER APPARATUS AND CIRCUITS USED IN THE AFTN

. . .

7.8.3.1 Selection of Type of modulation and code

Frequency shift modulation (F1B) should be employed in radioteletypewriter systems used in the aeronautical fixed service (AFS), except where the characteristics of the independent sideband (ISB) method of operation are of advantage.

Note - F1B type of modulation is accomplished by shifting a radio frequency carrier between two frequencies representing " position A" (start signal polarity) and " position Z " (stop signal polarity) of the start-stop 5-unit telegraphic code.

. . .

7.8.3.2.3 The overall distortion of the teletypewriter signal, as monitored at the output of the radio transmitter or in its immediate vicinity, should not exceed 10 per cent.

Note - Such distortion means the displacement in time of the transitions between elements from their proper positions, expressed as a percentage of unit element time.

. . .

7.8.5 TECHNICAL PROVISIONS RELATING TO ATS MESSAGE TRANSMISSION

7.8.5.1 Interconnection by direct or omnibus channels — low modulation rates — 5-unit code. Please see 7.8.6 for modulation rates.

7.8.5.1.1 AFTN techniques (c.f. 7.8.2) should be used.

7.8.6 TECHNICAL PROVISIONS RELATING TO INTERNATIONAL GROUND-GROUND DATA INTERCHANGE AT MEDIUM AND HIGHER SIGNALLING RATES

Note - Throughout this section in the context of coded character sets, the term "unit" means the unit of selective information and is essentially equivalent to the term "bit".

7.8.6.1 General

. . .

7.8.6.1.2 When the provisions of 7.8.6.1.1 are applied, International Alphabet No. 5 (IA-5) contained in Table 7.8-2 shall be used.

. . .

7.8.6.1.2.3 When the provisions of 7.8.6.1.2.2 are applied, the sense of the character parity bit shall produce even parity in links which operate on the start-stop principle, and odd parity in links using end-to-end synchronous operations.

7.8.6.1.2.4 Character-for-character conversion shall be as listed in Tables 7.8-3 and 7.8-4 for all characters which are authorized in the AFTN format for transmission on the AFS in both IA-5 and ITA-2.

. . .

7.8.6.2 Data transmission characteristics

. . .

7.8.6.2.3 The type of modulation for each data signalling rate should be chosen as follows:

Data signalling rate	Type of modulation
600 bits/s	Frequency
1 200 bits/s	Frequency
2 400 bits/s	Phase
4 800 bits/s	Phase
9 600 bits/s	Phase-amplitude

Note — This r ecommendation do es no t n ecessarily app ly to g round-ground e xtensions of ai r-ground links u sed exclusively for the transfer of air-ground data, inasmuch as such circuits may be considered as part of the air-ground link.

7.8.6.2.4   CHARACTER STRUCTURE ON DATA LINKS

7.8.6.2.4.1   Character parity shall not be used for error checking on CIDIN links. Parity appended to IA-5 coded characters per 7.8.6.1.2.2, prior to entry to the CIDIN shall be ignored. For messages exiting the CIDIN, parity shall be generated in accordance with 7.8.6.1.2.3.

. . .

7.8.6.2.5   When exchanging data over CIDIN links using bit-oriented procedures, the entry centre address, exit centre addresses and destination addresses in the Transport and CIDIN Packet Headers shall be in the IA-5 character set contained in Table 7.8-2.

7.8.6.2.6   When transmitting messages in AFTN format over CIDIN links using bit-oriented procedures, the messages should be in the IA-5 character set contained in Table 7.8-2.

7.8.6.3   Ground-ground character-oriented data link control procedures

Note - The p rovisions of t his s ection pe rtain t o g round-ground da ta i nterchange a pplications using I A-5 p rescribed b y 7. 8.6.1 an d w hich e mploy t he t en t ransmission c ontrol c haracters (SOH, S TX, E TX, E OT, E NQ, A CK, D LE, NA K, S YN, a nd E TB) f or d ata l ink c ontrol, ov er synchronous or asynchronous transmission facilities.

7.8.6.3.1   Descriptions. The following descriptions shall apply to data link applications contained in this section:

. . .

7.8.6.3.2 MESSAGE COMPOSITION

. . .

    b) An information message used for the exchange of data shall take one of the following forms:

```
1)  S              E  B
    T   ---TEXT---  T  C
    X              X  C

2)  S              E  B
    T   ---TEXT---  T  C
    X              B  C

3)  S                 S                 E  B
    O  ---HEADING---   T  ---TEXT---    T  C
    H                 X                 X  C

4)  S                 S                 E  B
    O  ---HEADING---   T  ---TEXT---    T  C
    H                 X                 B  C

5)  S              E  B
    O ---HEADING--- T  C
    H              B  C
```

Note 1 — $\dfrac{B}{C}$C is a block check character (BCC).

Note 2 — In formats 2), 4), and 5) above which end with ETB, some continuation is required.

c) A supervisory sequence shall be composed of either a single transmission control character (EOT, ENQ, ACK or NAK) or a single transmission control (ENQ) preceded by a prefix of up to 15 non-control characters, or the character DLE used in conjunction with other graphic and control characters to provide additional communication control functions.

. . .

7.8.6.3.3.1 In addition to the characteristics prescribed in the paragraphs that follow for both system categories A and B, other parameters that shall be accounted for in order to ensure viable, operationally reliable communications include:

a) the number of SYN characters required to establish and maintain synchronization;

Note - Normally the transmitting station sends three contiguous SYN characters and the receiving station detects at least two before any action is taken.

b) the values of system time-outs for such functions as "idle line" and "no response" as well as the number of automatic retries that are to be attempted before manual intervention is signalled;

c) the composition of prefixes within a 15 character maximum.

Note - By a greement be tween t he ad ministrations c oncerned, i t i s pe rmissible for supervisory signals t o c ontain a station i dentification prefix us ing c haracters s elected from columns 4 through 7 of IA-5.

7.8.6.3.3.2 For multipoint implementations designed to permit only centralized (computer-to-terminal) operations, the provisions of 7.8.6.3.7 should be employed.

7.8.6.3.4 BLOCK CHECK CHARACTER

. . .

7.8.6.3.4.5   The sense of the parity bit of the block check character shall be the same as for the information characters (see 7.8.6.1.2.3).

. . .

7.8.6.3.6 DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM CATEGORY B

. . .

7.8.6.3.6.1 *LINK ESTABLISHMENT PROCEDURE*

. . .

7.8.6.3.6.1.2   The called station, upon detecting ENQ, shall send one of two replies:

    a) if ready to receive, it shall send a sequence consisting of a DLE followed by a colon, a prefix which includes its identity and ended by ACK0 (see 7.8.6.3.6.2.5). This establishes the link for message transfers from the calling to the called station;

. . .

7.8.6.3.6.2 *MESSAGE TRANSFER PROCEDURE*

. . .

7.8.6.3.6.2.2   It is permissible for a transmission block to be a complete message or a portion of a message. The sending station shall initiate the transmission with SOTB N followed by:

    a) SOH if it is the beginning of a message that contains a heading;

. . .

    d) STX if it is an intermediate block that continues a text.

    Note - SOTB N is the two-character transmission control sequence DLE = (characters 1/0, and 3/13) followed by the block number, N, where N is one of the IA-5 characters 0, 1 ... 7 (characters 3/0, 3/1 ... 3/7).

7.8.6.3.6.2.3   A block which ends at an intermediate point within a message shall be ended with ETB; a block which ends at the end of a message shall be ended with ETX.

7.8.6.3.6.2.4   It shall be permissible for each station to initiate and continue to send messages to the other concurrently according to the following sequence.

    a)   It shall be permissible for the sending station (master side) to send blocks, containing messages or parts of messages, continuously to the receiving station (slave side) without waiting for a reply.

    b)   It shall be permissible for replies, in the form of slave responses, to be transmitted by the receiving station while the sending station is sending subsequent blocks.

    Note - By use of modulo 8 numbering of blocks and replies, it shall be permissible for the sending station to send as many as seven blocks ahead of the received replies before being required to stop transmission until six or less blocks are outstanding.

    c) If a negative reply is received, the sending station (master side) shall start retransmission with the block following the last block for which the proper affirmative acknowledgement was received

. . .

7.8.6.3.7.1 *LINK ESTABLISHMENT PROCEDURE*

7.8.6.3.7.1.1   To establish the link for transmission the control station shall either:
    a) poll one of the tributary stations to assign it master status; or.
    b)   assume master status and select a tributary station to assume slave status and receive a transmission according to either of two prescribed selection procedures:

1. selection with response (see 7.8.6.3.7.1.5); or
2. fast select (see 7.8.6.3.7.1.7)

...

7.8.6.3.7.1.6   A tributary station detecting its assigned selection supervisory sequence shall assume slave status and send one of two replies:

...

b)   if the station is not ready to receive, it shall send an optional prefix followed by NAK. Upon detecting NAK, it shall be permissible for the master station to again attempt selecting the same tributary station or initiate termination by sending EOT.

Note — If the control station receives an invalid or no reply, it is permitted to attempt again to select the same tributary or after N retries (N ≥ 0) either to exit to a recovery procedure or to initiate termination by sending EOT.

7.8.6.3.7.1.7   Fast select is accomplished by the control station assuming master status and sending a selection supervisory sequence, and without ending this transmission with ENQ or waiting for the selected tributary to respond, proceeding directly to message transfer.

...

7.8.6.4 Ground-ground bit-oriented data link control procedures

Note - The provisions of this section pertain to ground-ground data interchange applications using bit-oriented data link control procedures enabling transparent, synchronous transmission that is independent of any encoding; data link control functions are accomplished by interpreting designated bit positions in the transmission envelope of a frame.

7.8.6.4.1   The following descriptions shall apply to data link applications contained in this section:

...

7.8.6.4.2   BIT-ORIENTED DATA LINK CONTROL PROCEDURES FOR POINT-TO-POINT, GROUND-GROUND DATA INTERCHANGE APPLICATIONS EMPLOYING SYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION FACILITIES

Note.— The following link level procedures are the same as the LAPB link level procedures described in ITU CCITT Recommendation X.25, Section 2, Yellow Book (1981 version). Later versions of Recommendation X.25 will be reviewed as they are released to ascertain whether or not they should be adopted.

7.8.6.4.2.1   *Frame format.* Frames shall contain not less than 32 bits, excluding the opening and closing flags, and shall conform to the following format:

FLAG F	ADDRESS A	CONTROL C	INFORMATION I	FCS	FLAG F

7.8.6.4.2.1.1   A frame shall consist of an opening flag (F), an address field (A), a control field (C), an optional information field (I), a frame check sequence (FCS), and a closing flag sequence (F), and shall be transmitted in that order.

Note - In relation to CIDIN, the opening flag, the fields A and C, the FCS and the closing flag form together the Data Link Control Field (DLCF). The field I is denoted as the Link Data Field (LDF).

...

7.8.6.4.2.2.4   The generation and checking of the FCS accumulation shall be as follows:

a)	the transmitting station shall initiate the FCS accumulation with the first (least significant) bit of the address (A) field and shall include all bits up to and including the last bit preceding the FCS sequence, but shall exclude all 0 bits (if any) inserted to achieve transparent transmission;

b)	upon completion of the accumulation the FCS shall be transmitted, starting with bit b1 (highest order coefficient) and proceeding in sequence to bit b16 (lowest order coefficient) as shown below;

. . .

7.8.6.4.2.5	*MODES*

. . .

7.8.6.4.2.6.4	The station parameters associated with the three control field types shall be as follows:

. . .

j)	The maximum number (*k*) of sequentially numbered I-frames that a station may have outstanding (i.e. unacknowledged) at any given time is a station parameter which shall never exceed the modulus.

Note - k is determined by station buffering limitations and should be the subject of bilateral agreement at the time of circuit establishment

7.8.6.4.2.7	*Commands a nd r esponses*. It shall be permissible for a combined station to generate either commands or responses. A command shall contain the remote station address while a response shall contain the sending station address. The mnemonics associated with all of the commands and responses prescribed for each of the three frame types (I, S, and U) and the corresponding encoding of the control field are as shown in Table 7.8-6 at the end of CAR-ANS 7.8.

. . .

7.8.6.4.2.7.2.1 The receive ready command or response (RR) shall be used by a station to:

. . .

c)	clear a busy condition that was initiated by the transmission of RNR.

Note - It is permissible for a combined station to use the RR command to solicit a response from the remote combined station with the poll bit set to "1".

7.8.6.4.2.7.2.2	It shall be permissible to issue a reject command or response (REJ) to request retransmission of frames starting with the I-frame numbered $N(R)$ where:

. . .

7.8.6.4.2.7.3	The U-frame commands and responses shall be used to extend the number of link control functions. Transmitted U-frames do not increment the sequence counts at either the transmitting or receiving station.

. . .

c) The frame reject response (FRMR), employing the information field described below, shall be used by a combined station in the operational mode (ABM) to report that one of the following conditions resulted from the receipt of a frame without an FCS error:

...

3) a frame having an invalid $N(R)$ count.

Note - An invalid N(R) *is a count which points to an I-frame which has previously been transmitted and acknowledged or to an I-frame which has not been transmitted and is not the next sequential I-frame pending transmission*

d) The disconnected mode response (DM) shall be used to report a non-operational status here the station is logically disconnected from the link. No information field shall be permitted with the DM response.

7.8.6.4.3 EXCEPTION CONDITION REPORTING AND RECOVERY

...

7.8.6.4.3.1 *Busy condition*. A busy condition occurs when a station temporarily cannot receive or continue to receive I-frames due to internal constraints, e.g. due to buffering limitations. The busy condition shall be reported to the remote combined station by the transmission of an RNR frame with the $N(R)$ number of the next I-frame that is expected. It shall be permissible for traffic pending transmission at the busy station to be transmitted prior to or following the RNR.

Note - The continued existence of a busy condition must be reported by retransmission of RNR at each P/F frame exchange.

...

7.8.6.4.3.2.1 The means specified in 7.8.6.4.3.2.1.1 and 7.8.6.4.3.2.1.2 shall be available for initiating the retransmission of lost or errored I-frames following the occurrence of a sequence error.

...

7.8.6.4.3.2.1.1 Where the REJ command/response is used to initiate an exception recovery following the detection of a sequence error, only one "sent REJ" exception condition, from one station to another station, shall be established at a time. A "sent REJ" exception shall be cleared when the requested I-frame is received. A station receiving REJ shall initiate sequential (re)transmission of I-frames starting with the I-frame indicated by the $N(R)$ contained in the REJ frame.

FRMR INFORMATION FIELD BITS FOR BASIC (SABM) OPERATION

First bit transmitted											
1 8	9	10 12	13	14 16	17	18	19	20	21 24
Rejected basic control field	0	*V(S)*	*v*	*V(R)*	*w*	*x*	*y*	*z*	set to zero

where:

rejected basic control field is the control field of the received frame which caused the frame reject;

$V(S)$ is the current value of the send state variable at the remote combined station reporting the error condition (bit 10 = low order bit);

$V(R)$ is the current value of the receive state variable at the remote combined station reporting the error condition (bit 14 = low order bit);

v set to "1" indicates that the received frame which caused rejection was a response;

w set to "1" indicates that the control field received and returned in bits 1 through 8 are invalid or not implemented;

x set to "1" indicates that the control field received and returned in bits 1 through 8 was considered invalid because the frame contained an information field which is not permitted with this command. Bit *w* must be set to "1" in conjunction with this bit;

y set to "1" indicates that the information field received exceeded the maximum information field length which can be accommodated by the station reporting the error condition. This bit is mutually exclusive with bits *w* and *x* above;

z set to "1" indicates that the control field received and returned in bits 1 through 8 contained an invalid *N(R)* count. This bit is mutually exclusive with bit *w*.

. . .

7.8.6.4.3.2.1.3   A combined station which has timed out waiting for a response should not retransmit all unacknowledged frames immediately. The station may enquire about status with a supervisory frame.

Note 1 — If a station does retransmit all unacknowledged I-frames after a time-out, it must be prepared to receive a subsequent REJ frame with an N(R) greater than its send variable V(S).

Note 2 — Since contention may occur in the case of two-way alternate communications in ABM or ADM, the time-out interval employed by one combined station must be greater than that employed by the other combined station so as to permit contention to be resolved.

. . .

7.8.6.5   Common ICAO data interchange network (CIDIN)

7.8.6.5.1   INTRODUCTION

Note 1 — The common ICAO data interchange network (CIDIN) is an element of the aeronautical fixed service (AFS) which uses bit-oriented procedures, store and forward techniques and packet switching techniques based on CCITT Recommendation X.25 to carry messages of specific applications of the AFS such as AFTN and operational meteorological information (OPMET).

Note 2 — The CIDIN provides a reliable common network service for the conveyance of application messages in binary or text form to air traffic service providers and aircraft operating agencies.

7.8.6.5.1.1   CIDIN entry and exit centres or stations shall be used to connect application entities to the CIDIN.

Note — The interfacing between CIDIN and application entities is a matter for local implementation.

. . .

7.8.6.5.2   GENERAL

7.8.6.5.2.1   There shall be four protocol levels defined to control the transfer of messages between CIDIN switching centres:

— the data link protocol level
— the X.25 packet protocol level
— the CIDIN packet protocol level
— the CIDIN transport protocol level.

Note 1 — The relationship of the terms used is shown in Figures 7.8-1 and 7.8-2.

. . .

7.8.6.5.2.5 *THE TRANSPORT PROTOCOL LEVEL*

. . .

7.8.6.5.2.5.5 Recovery of messages shall be performed at the transport level.

TABLES FOR CAR-ANS 7.8

Table 7.8-1 International Telegraph Alphabets No. 2 and No. 3

Number of signal	Letter case	Figure case	Impulses 5-unit code		
			Start	*12345*	*Stop*
				International Code No. 2	
1	A	—	A	ZZAAA	Z
2	B	?	A	ZAAZZ	Z
3	C	:	A	AZZZA	Z
4	D	Note 1	A	ZAAZA	Z
5	E	3	A	ZAAAA	Z
6	F		A	ZAZZA	Z
7	G		A	AZAZZ	Z
8	H		A	AAZAZ	Z
9	I	8	A	AZZAA	Z
10	J	Attention signal	A	ZZAZA	Z
11	K	(	A	ZZZZA	Z
12	L	)	A	AZAAZ	Z
13	M	.	A	AAZZZ	Z
14	N	,	A	AAZZA	Z
15	O	9	A	AAAZZ	Z
16	P	0	A	AZZAZ	Z
17	Q	1	A	ZZZAZ	Z
18	R	4	A	AZAZA	Z
19	S	'	A	ZAZAA	Z
20	T	5	A	AAAAZ	Z
21	U	7	A	ZZZAA	Z
22	V	=	A	AZZZZ	Z
23	W	2	A	ZZAAZ	Z
24	X	/	A	ZAZZZ	Z
25	Y	6	A	ZAZAZ	Z
26	Z	+	A	ZAAAZ	Z
27	carriage return		A	AAAZA	Z
28	line feed		A	AZAAA	Z
29	letters		A	ZZZZZ	Z
30	figures space		A	ZZAZZ	Z
31	unperforated tape		A	AAZAA	Z
32	signal repetition		A	AAAAA	Z
33	signal α				
34	signal ß				
35					

Sign	*Closed circuit*	*Double current*
A	No current	Negative current
Z	Positive current	Positive current

Note 1.— Used for answer-back facility.

Table 7.8-2 International Alphabet No. 5 (IA-5)

(international reference version)

b4	b3	b2	b1		b7	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1
					b6	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	1
					b5	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	1
						0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
0	0	0	0	0		NUL	TC7 (DLE)	SP	0	@	P	`	p
0	0	0	1	1		TC1 (SOH)	DC1	!	1	A	Q	a	q
0	0	1	0	2		TC2 (STX)	DC2	" ④	2	B	R	b	r
0	0	1	1	3		TC3 (ETX)	DC3	#	3	C	S	c	s
0	1	0	0	4		TC4 (EOT)	DC4	¤ ②	4	D	T	d	t
0	1	0	1	5		TC5 (ENQ)	TC8 (NAK)	%	5	E	U	e	u
0	1	1	0	6		TC6 (ACK)	TC9 (SYN)	&	6	F	V	f	v
0	1	1	1	7		BEL	TC10 (ETB)	' ④	7	G	W	g	w
1	0	0	0	8		FE0 (BS)	CAN	(	8	H	X	h	x
1	0	0	1	9		FE1 (HT)	EM	)	9	I	Y	i	y
1	0	1	0	10		FE2① (LF)	SUB	*	:	J	Z	j	z
1	0	1	1	11		FE3 (VT)	ESC	+	;	K	[	k	{
1	1	0	0	12		FE4 (FF)	IS4 (FS)	④ ,	<	L	\	l	|
1	1	0	1	13		FE5① (CR)	IS3 (GS)	–	=	M	]	m	}
1	1	1	0	14		SO	IS2 (RS)	.	>	N	^ ④	n	‾ ③
1	1	1	1	15		SI	IS1 (US)	/	?	O	__	o	DEL

NOTES

Note 1.—The format effectors are intended for equipment in which horizontal and vertical movements are effected separately. If equipment requires the action of CARRIAGE RETURN to be combined with a vertical movement, the format effector for that vertical movement may be used to effect the combined movement. Use of FE 2 for a combined CR and LF operation is not allowed for international transmission on AFS networks.

Note 2.—The symbol ¤ does not designate the currency of a specific country.

Note 3.—Position 7/14 is used for graphic character ‾ (OVERLINE), the graphical representation of which may vary according to national use to represent (TILDE) or another diacritical sign provided that there is no risk of confusion with another graphic character included in the table.

Note 4.—The graphic characters in position 2/2, 2/7, 2/12 and 5/14 have respectively the significance of QUOTATION MARK, APOSTROPHE, COMMA and UPWARD ARROW HEAD; however, these characters take on the significance of the diacritical signs DIAERESIS, ACUTE ACCENT, CEDILLA and CIRCUMFLEX ACCENT when they are preceded or followed by the BACKSPACE character (0/8).

Note 5.—When graphical representation of the control characters of IA-5 is required, it is permissible to use the symbols specified in International Organization for Standardization (ISO) Standard 2047-1975.

CONTROL CHARACTERS			GRAPHIC CHARACTERS			
Abbreviation	*Meaning*	*Position in the code table*	*Graphic*	*Note*	*Name*	*Position in the code table*
ACK	Acknowledge	0/6	(space)		Space (see 7.2)	2/0
BEL	Bell	0/7	!		Exclamation mark	2/1
BS	Backspace	0/8	"	4	Quotation mark, Diaeresis	2/2
CAN	Cancel	1/8	#		Number sign	2/3
CR	Carriage return*	0/13	¤	2	Currency sign	2/4
DC	Device control	–	%		Percent sign	2/5
DEL	Delete	7/15	&		Ampersand	2/6
DLE	Data link escape	1/0	'	4	Apostrophe, Acute accent	2/7
EM	End of medium	1/9	(		Left parenthesis	2/8
ENQ	Enquiry	0/5	)		Right parenthesis	2/9
EOT	End of transmission	0/4	*		Asterisk	2/10
ESC	Escape	1/11	+		Plus sign	2/11
ETB	End of transmission block	1/7	,		Comma, Cedilla	2/12
ETX	End of text	0/3	–	4	Hyphen, Minus sign	2/13
FE	Format effector	–	.		Full stop (period)	2/14
FF	Form feed	0/12	/		Solidus	2/15
FS	File separator	1/12	:		Colon	3/10
GS	Group separator	1/13	;		Semi-colon	3/11
HT	Horizontal tabulation	0/9	<		Less-than sign	3/12
IS	Information separator	–	=		Equal sign	3/13
LF	Line feed*	0/10	>		Greater-than sign	3/14
NAK	Negative acknowledge	1/5	?		Question mark	3/15
NUL	Null	0/0	@		Commercial 'at'	4/0
RS	Record separator	1/14	[		Left square bracket	5/11
SI	Shift-in	0/15	\		Reverse solidus	5/12
SO	Shift-out	0/14	]		Right square bracket	5/13
SOH	Start of heading	0/1	^		Upward arrow head, Circumflex accent	5/14
SP	Space	2/0				
STX	Start of text	0/2	_—		Underline	5/15
SUB	Substitute character	1/10	`		Grave accent	6/0
SYN	Synchronous idle	1/6	{	4	Left curly bracket	7/11
TC	Transmission control	–	|		Vertical line	7/12
US	Unit separator	1/15	}		Right curly bracket	7/13
VT	Vertical tabulation	0/11	¯	3	Overline, Tilde	7/14

* See Note 1.

DIACRITICAL SIGNS

In the character set, some printing symbols may be designed to permit their use for the composition of accented letters when necessary for general interchange of information. A sequence of three characters, comprising a letter, BACKSPACE and one of these symbols, is needed for this composition, and the symbol is then regarded as a diacritical sign. It should be noted that these symbols take on their diacritical significance only when they are preceded or followed by the BACKSPACE character: for example, the symbol corresponding to the code combination 2/7 (') normally has the significance of APOSTROPHE, but becomes the diacritical sign ACUTE ACCENT when it precedes or follows the BACKSPACE character.

NAMES, MEANINGS AND FONTS OF GRAPHIC CHARACTERS

At least one name is assigned to denote each of the graphic characters. These names are intended to reflect their customary meanings and are not intended to define or restrict the meanings of graphic characters. No particular style or font design is specified for the graphic characters.

UNIQUENESS OF CHARACTER ALLOCATION

A character allocated to a position in the table may not be placed elsewhere in the table.

FUNCTIONAL CHARACTERISTICS RELATED TO CONTROL CHARACTERS

Some definitions given below are stated in general terms and more explicit definitions of use may be needed for specific implementation of the code table on recording media or on transmission channels. These more explicit definitions and the use of these characters are the subject of ISO publications.

General designations of control characters

The general designation of control characters involves a specific class name followed by a subscript number. They are defined as follows:

TC   — *Transmission control characters* — Control characters intended to control or facilitate transmission of information over telecommunication networks.
       The use of the TC characters on the general telecommunication networks is the subject of ISO publications.
       The transmission control characters are:
       ACK, DLE, ENQ, EOT, ETB, ETX, NAK, SOH, STX and SYN.

FE   — *Format effectors* — Control characters mainly intended for the control of the layout and positioning of information on printing and/or display devices. In the definitions of specific format effectors, any reference to printing devices should be interpreted as including display devices. The definitions of format effectors use the following concept:

d) a page is composed of a number of lines of characters;

e) the characters forming a line occupy a number of positions called character positions;

f) the active position is that character position in which the character about to be processed would appear if it were to be printed. The active position normally advances one character position at a time.

The format effector characters are:
BS, CR, FF, HT, LF and VT.

DC — *Device control characters* — Control characters for the control of a local or remote ancillary device (or devices) connected to a data processing and/or telecommunication system. These control characters are not intended to control telecommunication systems; this should be achieved by the use of TCs.

Certain preferred uses of the individual DCs are given below under *Specific control characters*.

IS — *Information separators* — Control characters that are used to separate and qualify data logically. There are four such characters. They may be used either in hierarchical order or non-hierarchically; in the latter case their specific meanings depend on their applications.

When they are used hierarchically, the ascending order is:
US, RS, GS, FS.

In this case data normally delimited by a particular separator cannot be split by a higher order separator but will be considered as delimited by any higher order separator.

Specific control characters

Individual members of the classes of controls are sometimes referred to by their abbreviated class name and a subscript number (e.g. TC5) and sometimes by a specific name indicative of their use (e.g. ENQ).

Different but related meanings may be associated with some of the control characters but in an interchange of data this normally requires agreement between the sender and the recipient.

ACK — *Acknowledge* — A transmission control character transmitted by a receiver as an affirmative response to the sender.

BEL — *Bell* — A control character that is used when there is a need to call for attention; it may control alarm or attention devices. BS — *Backspace* — A format effector which moves the active position one character position backwards on the same line.

CAN — *Cancel* — A character, or the first character of a sequence, indicating that the data preceding it are in error. As a result these data are to be ignored. The specific meaning of this character must be defined for each application and/or between sender and recipient.

CR — *Carriage return* — A format effector which moves the active position to the first character position on the same line.

Device controls

DC$_1$ — A device control character which is primarily intended for turning on or starting an ancillary device. If it is not required for this purpose, it may be used to restore a device to the basic mode of operation (*see also* DC$_2$ and DC$_3$), or for any other device control function not provided by other DCs.

DC$_2$ — A device control character which is primarily intended for turning on or starting an ancillary device. If it is not required for this purpose, it may be used to set a device to a special mode of operation (in which case DC$_1$ is used to restore the device to the basic mode), or for any other device control function not provided by other DCs.

DC$_3$ — A device control character which is primarily intended for turning off or stopping an ancillary device. This function may be a secondary level stop, e.g. wait, pause, stand-by or halt (in which case DC$_1$ is used to restore normal operation). If it is not required for this purpose, it may be used for any other device control function not provided by other DCs.

DC$_4$ — A device control character which is primarily intended for turning off, stopping or interrupting an ancillary device. If it is not required for this purpose, it may be used for any other device control function not provided by other DCs.

Examples of use of the device controls

1) One switching

                      on — DC_2 off — DC_4

2) Two independent switchings

First one   on — DC_2 off — DC_4

Second one   on — DC_1 off — DC_3

3) Two dependent switchings

General   on — DC_2 off — DC_4

Particular   on — DC_1 off — DC_3

4) Input and output switching

Output   on — DC_2 off — DC_4

Input   on — DC_1 off — DC_3

DEL — *Delete* — A character used primarily to erase or obliterate an erroneous or unwanted character in punched tape. DEL characters may also serve to accomplish media-fill or time-fill. They may be inserted into or removed from a stream of data without affecting the information content of that stream, but then the addition or removal of these characters may affect the information layout and/or the control of equipment.

DLE — *Data link escape* — A transmission control character which will change the meaning of a limited number of contiguously following characters. It is used exclusively to provide supplementary data transmission control functions. Only graphic characters and transmission control characters can be used in DLE sequences.

EM — *End of medium* — A control character that may be used to identify the physical end of a medium, or the end of the used portion of a medium, or the end of the wanted portion of data recorded on a medium. The position of this character does not necessarily correspond to the physical end of the medium.

ENQ — *Enquiry* — A transmission control character used as a request for a response from a remote station — the response may include station identification and/or station status. When a "Who are you?" function is required on the general switched transmission network, the first use of ENQ after the connection is established shall have the meaning "Who are you?" (station identification). Subsequent use of ENQ may, or may not, include the function "Who are you?", as determined by agreement.

EOT — *End of transmission* — A transmission control character used to indicate the conclusion of the transmission of one or more texts.

ESC — *Escape* — A control character which is used to provide an additional control function. It alters the meaning of a limited number of contiguously following bit combinations which constitute the escape sequence.
    Escape sequences are used to obtain additional control functions which may provide among other things graphic sets outside the standard set. Such control functions must not be used as additional transmission controls.
    The use of the character ESC and of the escape sequences in conjunction with code extension techniques is the subject of an ISO Standard.

ETB — *End of transmission block* — A transmission control character used to indicate the end of a transmission block of data where data are divided into such blocks for transmission purposes.

ETX — *End of text* — A transmission control character which terminates a text.

FF — *Form feed* — A format effector which advances the active position to the same character position on a predetermined line of the next form or page.

HT — *Horizontal tabulation* — A format effector which advances the active position to the next predetermined character position on the same line.

Information separators

IS_1 (US) — A control character used to separate and qualify data logically; its specific meaning has to be defined for each application. If this character is used in hierarchical order as specified in the general definition of IS, it delimits a data item called a UNIT.

IS_2 (RS) — A control character used to separate and qualify data logically; its specific meaning has to be defined for each application. If this character is used in hierarchical order as specified in the general definition of IS, it delimits a data item called a RECORD.

IS₃ (GS) — A control character used to separate and qualify data logically; its specific meaning has to be defined for each application. If this character is used in hierarchical order as specified in the general definition of IS, it delimits a data item called a GROUP.

IS₄ (FS) — A control character used to separate and qualify data logically; its specific meaning has to be defined for each application. If this character is used in hierarchical order as specified in the general definition of IS, it delimits a data item called a FILE.

LF — *Line feed* — A format effector which advances the active position to the same character position of the next line.

NAK — *Negative acknowledge* — A transmission control character transmitted by a receiver as a negative response to the sender.

NUL — *Null* — A control character used to accomplish media-fill or time-fill. NUL characters may be inserted into or removed from a stream of data without affecting the information content of that stream, but then the addition or removal of these characters may affect the information layout and/or the control of equipment..

SI — *Shift-in* — A control character which is used in conjunction with SHIFT-OUT and ESCAPE to extend the graphic character set of the code. It may reinstate the standard meanings of the bit combinations which follow it. The effect of this character when using code extension techniques is described in an ISO Standard.

SO — *Shift-out* — A control character which is used in conjunction with SHIFT-IN and ESCAPE to extend the graphic character set of the code. It may alter the meaning of the bit combinations of columns 2 to 7 which follow it until a SHIFT-IN character is reached. However, the characters SPACE (2/0) and DELETE (7/15) are unaffected by SHIFT-OUT. The effect of this character when using code extension techniques is described in an ISO Standard.

SOH — *Start of heading* — A transmission control character used as the first character of a heading of an information message.

SP — *Space* — A character which advances the active position one character position on the same line. This character is also regarded as a nonprinting graphic.

STX — *Start of text* — A transmission control character which precedes a text and which is used to terminate a heading.

SUB — *Substitute character* — A control character used in the place of a character that has been found to be invalid or in error. SUB is intended to be introduced by automatic means.

SYN — *Synchronous idle* — A transmission control character used by a synchronous transmission system in the absence of any other character (idle condition) to provide a signal from which synchronism may be achieved or retained between data terminal equipment.

VT — *Vertical tabulation* — A format effector which advances the active position to the same character position on the next predetermined line.

Table 7.8-3 Conversion from the International Telegraph Alphabet No. 2 (ITA-2) to the International Alphabet No. 5 (IA-5)

ITA-2 letter case of signal No.		IA-5 column/row		ITA-2 figure case of signal No.		IA-5 column/row	
1	A	4/	A	1	–	2/1	–
2	B	4/	B	2	?	3/1	?
3	C	4/	C	3	:	3/1	:
4	D	4/	D	4		3/1	?
5	E	4/	E 5	5	3	3/3	3
6	F	4/	F	6		3/1	?
7	G	4/	G	7		3/1	?
8	H	4/	H	8		3/1	?
9	I	4/	I	9	8	3/8	8
10	J	4/	J 10	10	Attention Signal *(Note 3)*	0/7	Bel
11	K	4/	K	11	(	2/8	(

134

12	L	4/12	L	12	)	2/9	)
13	M	4/13	M	13	.	2/14	.
14	N	4/14	N	14	,	2/12	,
15	O	4/15	O	15	9	3/9	9
16	P	5/0	P	16	0	3/0	0
17	Q	5/1	Q	17	1	3/1	1
18	R	5/2	R	18	4	3/4	4
19	S	5/3	S	19	'	2/7	'
20	T	5/4	T	20	5	3/5	5
21	U	5/5	U	21	7	3/7	7
22	V	5/6	V	22	=	3/13	=
23	W	5/7	W	23	2	3/2	2
24	X	5/8	X	24	/	2/15	/
25	Y	5/9	Y	25	6	3/6	6
26	Z	5/10	Z	26	+	2/11	+
27	CR	0/13	CR	27	CR	0/13	CR
28	LF	0/10	LF	28	LF	0/10	LF
29	LTRS	*		29	LTRS	*	
30	FIGS	*		30	FIGS	*	
31	SP	2/0	SP	31	SP	2/0	SP
32		*		32		*	

No conversion shall be made for these positions and the signal/character shall be removed from the data.

Note 1.— The end-of-message signal NNNN (in letter and figure case) shall convert to ETX (0/3). Note 2.— The start-of-message signal ZCZC (in letter and figure case) shall convert to SOH (0/1).

Note 3.— Figures case of Signal No. 10 shall only be converted upon detection of the AFTN priority alarm which shall convert to five occurrences of BEL (0/7).

Note 4.— When converting from ITA-2, a STX (0/2) character shall be inserted once at the beginning of the next line following detection of CR LF or LF CR at the end of the Origin Line.

Note 5.— The sequence of seven signal 28 (LF) shall convert to one VT (0/11) character.

**Table 7.8-4 Conversion from the International Alphabet No. 5 (IA-5)
to the International Telegraph Alphabet No. 2 (ITA-2)**

Row \ Col.	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
0	*	*	31FL	16F	2F	16L	2F	16L
1	Note 5	*	2F	17F	1L	17L	1L	17L
2	*	*	2F	23F	2L	18L	2L	18L
3	Note 1	*	2F	5F	3L	19L	3L	19L
4	*	*	2F	18F	4L	20L	4L	20L
5	*	*	2F	20F	5L	21L	5L	21L
6	*	*	2F	25F	6L	22L	6L	22L
7	Note 2	*	19F	21F	7L	23L	7L	23L
8	*	*	11F	9F	8L	24L	8L	24L

9	*	*	12F	15F	9L	25L	9L	25L
10	28 FL	*	2F	3F	10L	26L	10L	26L
11	Note 3	*	26F	2F	11L	2F	11L	2F
12	*	*	14F	2F	12L	2F	12L	2F
13	27FL	*	1F	22F	13L	2F	13L	2F
14	*	*	13F	2F	14L	2F	14L	2F
15	*	*	24F	2F	15L	2F	15L	*

No conversion shall be made for these positions and the signal/character shall be removed from the data.

Example: *To find the ITA-2 signal to which the character 3/6 of IA-5 is to be converted, look at column 3, row 6.*
25F means figure case of signal No. 25
(L = letter case, FL = either case designation).

Note 1.— *The character 0/3 (ETX) shall convert to the ITA-2 sequence signals 14L, 14L, 14L, 14L (NNNN).*

Note 2. — *The signal 0/7 (BEL) shall only be converted when a sequence of 5 occurrences is detected, which shall convert to the ITA-2 sequence signals 30, 10F, 10F, 10F, 10F, 10F, 29.*

Note 3. — *The character sequence CR CR LF VT (0/11) ETX (0/3) shall convert to the ITA-2 sequence signals 29, 27, 27, 28, 28, 28, 28, 28, 28, 28, 28, 14L, 14L, 14L, 14L.*

Note 4. — *To prevent redundant generation of figure and letter characters in ITA-2 when converting from IA-5, no case designation shall be assigned to ITA-2 non-printing functions (signals No. 27, 28, 29, 30, 31).*

Note 5. — *The character 0/1 (SOH) shall convert to the ITA-2 sequence signals 26L, 3L, 26L, 3L (ZCZC).*

Table 7.8-5 Control field formats

Control field format for	Control field bits							
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Information transfer (I frame)	0		$N(S)$		P		$N(R)$	
Supervisory commands/responses (S frame)	1	0	S	S	P/F		$N(R)$	
Unnumbered commands/responses	1	1	M	M	P/F	M	M	M

where:

$N(S)$ = send sequence count (bit 2 = low order bit)
$N(R)$ = receive sequence count (bit 6 = low order bit)
S = supervisory function bits
M = modifier function bits
P = poll bit (in commands)
F = final bit (in responses)

Table 7.8-6 Commands and responses

Type	Commands		Responses		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
									C field encoding			
Information transfer	I	(information)			0		*N(S)*		*P*		*N(R)*	
Supervisory	RR	(receive ready)	RR	(receive ready)	1	0	0	0	*P/F*		*N(R)*	
	RNR	(receive not ready)	RNR	(receive not ready)	1	0	1	0	*P/F*		*N(R)*	
	REJ	(reject)	REJ	(reject)	1	0	0	1	*P/F*		*N(R)*	
Unnumbered			DM	(disconnected mode)	1	1	1	1	*P/F*	0	0	0
	SABM	(set asynchronous balanced mode)			1	1	1	1	*P*	1	0	0
	DISC	(disconnect)			1	1	0	0	*P*	0	1	0
			UA	(unnumbered acknowledgement)	1	1	0	0	*F*	1	1	0
			FRMR	(frame reject)	1	1	1	0	*F*	0	0	1

FIGURES FOR CAR-ANS 7.8
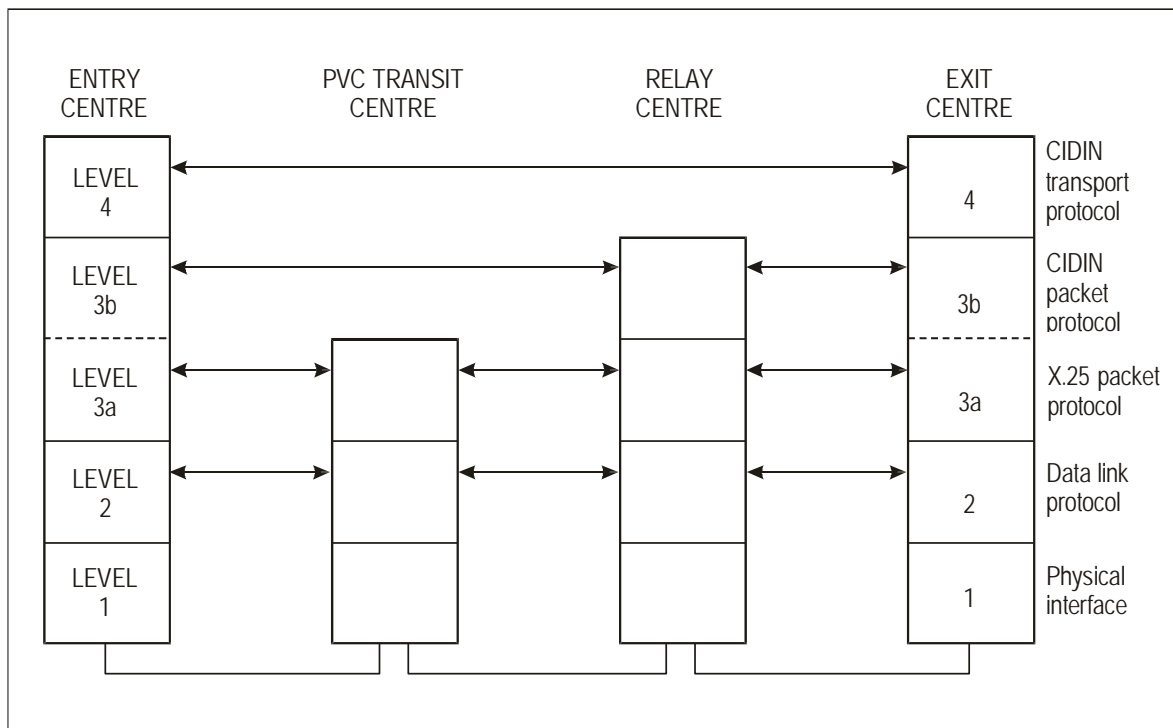
Figure 7.8-1 CIDIN protocol levels
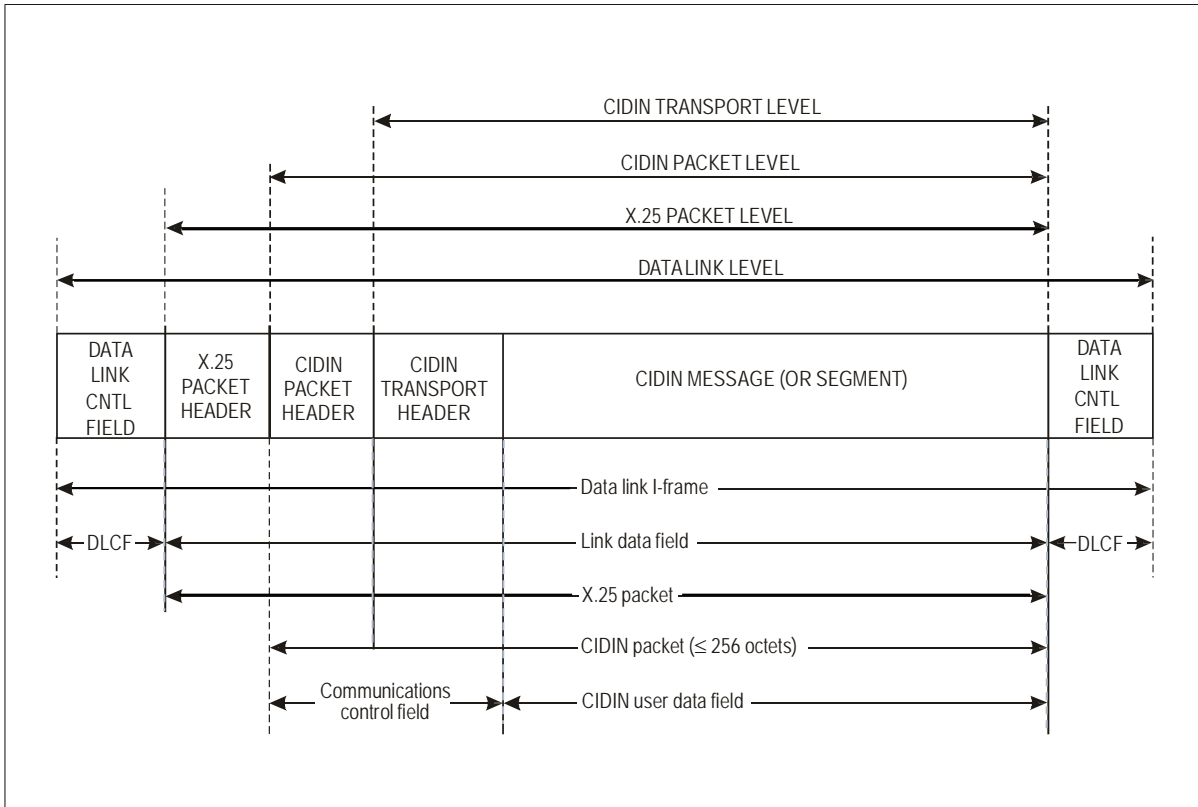
Figure 7.8-2 CIDIN terminology

7.9 AIRCRAFT ADDRESSING SYSTEM

7.9.1   The aircraft address shall be one of 16 777 214 twenty-four-bit aircraft addresses allocated by ICAO to the State of Registry or common mark registering authority and assigned as prescribed in the Appendix to this chapter.

7.9.1.1   Non-aircraft transponders that are installed on aerodrome surface vehicles, obstacles or fixed Mode S target detection devices for surveillance and/or radar monitoring purposes shall be assigned 24-bit aircraft addresses.

Note - Under such specific conditions, the term "aircraft" can be understood as "aircraft (or pseudo-aircraft) or v ehicle (A/V)" w here a l imited s et of data i s ge nerally s ufficient fo r operational purposes.

7.9.1.1.1   Mode S transponders used under specific conditions stated in 7.9.1.1 shall not have any negative impact on the performance of existing ATS surveillance systems and ACAS.

Note - A worldwide scheme for the allocation, assignment and application of aircraft addresses is c ontained in t he A ppendix t o this Ch apter. A dditionally, Table 7 .9-1, A llocation of ai rcraft addresses to States, has been provided as an attachment to the Appendix to provide for blocks of consecutive addresses available to the States for assignment to aircraft.

APPENDIX TO CHAPTER 7.9.

A WORLDWIDE SCHEME FOR THE ALLOCATION, ASSIGNMENT AND APPLICATION OF AIRCRAFT ADDRESSES

1. **GENERAL**

1.1   Global communications, navigation and surveillance systems shall use an individual aircraft address composed of 24 bits. At any one time, no address shall be assigned to more than one aircraft. The assignment of aircraft addresses requires a comprehensive scheme providing for a balanced and expandable distribution of aircraft addresses applicable worldwide.

2.   DESCRIPTION OF THE SCHEME

2.1 Table 7.9-1 provides for blocks of consecutive addresses available to States for assignment to aircraft. Each block is defined by a fixed pattern of the first 4, 6, 9, 12 or 14 bits of the 24-bit address. Thus, blocks of different sizes (1 048 576, 262 144, 32 768, 4 096 and 1 024 consecutive addresses, respectively) are made available.

3.   MANAGEMENT OF THE SCHEME

3.1   The International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) shall administer the scheme so that appropriate international distribution of aircraft addresses can be maintained.

4. ALLOCATION OF AIRCRAFT ADDRESSES

4.1 Blocks of aircraft addresses shall be allocated by ICAO to the State of Registry or common mark registering authority. Address allocations to States shall be as shown in Table 7.9-1.

4.2 A State of Registry or common mark registering authority shall notify ICAO when allocation to that State of an additional block of addresses is required for assignment to aircraft.

4.3 In the future management of the scheme, advantage shall be taken of the blocks of aircraft addresses not yet allocated. These spare blocks shall be distributed on the basis of the relevant ICAO region:

Addresses starting with bit combination 00100: AFI region

Addresses starting with bit combination 00101: SAM region

Addresses starting with bit combination 0101: EUR and NAT regions

Addresses starting with bit combination 01100: MID region

Addresses starting with bit combination 01101: ASIA region

Addresses starting with bit combination 1001: NAM and PAC regions

Addresses starting with bit combination 111011: CAR region

In addition, aircraft addresses starting with bit combinations 1011, 1101 and 1111 have been reserved for future use.

4.4 Any future requirement for additional aircraft addresses shall be accommodated through coordination between ICAO and the States of Registry or common mark registering authority concerned. A request for additional aircraft addresses shall only be made by a registering authority when at least 75 per cent of the number of addresses already allocated to that registering authority have been assigned to aircraft.

4.5 ICAO shall allocate blocks of aircraft addresses to non-Contracting States upon request.

5.   ASSIGNMENT OF AIRCRAFT ADDRESSES

5.1   Using its allocated block of addresses, the State of Registry or common mark registering authority shall assign an individual aircraft address to each suitably equipped aircraft entered on a national or international register (Table 7.9-1).

Note. — For a n ai rcraft de livery, t he ai rcraft ope rator i s e xpected t o i nform t he ai rframe manufacturer o f a n address assignment. T he a irframe manufacturer or ot her organization responsible fo r a delivery fl ight is expected t o e nsure i nstallation of a c orrectly as signed address supplied by the State of Registry or common mark registering authority. Exceptionally, a temporary address may be supplied under the arrangements detailed in paragraph 7.

5.2   Aircraft addresses shall be assigned to aircraft in accordance with the following principles:

a)   at any one time, no address shall be assigned to more than one aircraft with the exception of aerodrome surface vehicles on surface movement areas. If such exceptions are applied by the State of Registry, the vehicles which have been allocated the same address shall not operate on aerodromes separated by less than 1 000 km;

b) only one address shall be assigned to an aircraft, irrespective of the composition of equipment on board. In the case when a removable transponder is shared by several light aviation aircraft such as balloons or gliders, it shall be possible to assign a unique address to the removable transponder. The registers 08_{16}, 20_{16}, 21_{16}, 22_{16} and 25_{16} of the removable transponder shall be correctly updated each time the removable transponder is installed in any aircraft;

c)   the address shall not be changed except under exceptional circumstances and shall not be changed during flight;

d)   when an aircraft changes its State of Registry, the new registering State shall assign the aircraft a new address from its own allocation address block, and the old aircraft address shall be returned to the allocation address block of the State that previously registered the aircraft;

e)   the address shall serve only a technical role for addressing and identification of aircraft and shall not be used to convey any specific information; and

f)   the addresses composed of 24 ZEROS or 24 ONES shall not be assigned to aircraft.

5.2.1 Any method used to assign aircraft addresses shall ensure efficient use of the entire address block that is allocated to that State.

6. APPLICATION OF AIRCRAFT ADDRESSES

6.1   The aircraft addresses shall be used in applications which require the routing of information to or from individual suitably equipped aircraft.

Note 1 . — Examples of such a pplications a re t he ae ronautical t elecommunication ne twork (ATN), SSR Mode S and airborne collision avoidance system (ACAS).

Note 2. — This S tandard does not preclude a ssigning t he aircraft a ddresses f or special applications associated with the general applications defined therein. Examples of such special applications are the utilization of the 24-bit address in a pseudo-aeronautical earth station to monitor the ae ronautical m obile-satellite service ground earth station and in the fixed Mode S transponders (reporting the on -the-ground s tatus a s s pecified in CA R-ANS Pa rt 9 , 9.3.1.2.6.10.1.2) t o m onitor the Mode S ground s tation o peration. A ddress assignments f or special applications are to be carried out in conformance with the procedure established by the State to manage the 24-bit address assignments to aircraft.

6.2 An address consisting of 24 ZEROs shall not be used for any application.

7. ADMINISTRATION OF THE TEMPORARY AIRCRAFT ADDRESS ASSIGNMENTS

7.1   Temporary addresses shall be assigned to aircraft in exceptional circumstances, such as when operators have been unable to obtain an address from their individual States of Registry or Common Mark Registering Authority in a timely manner. ICAO shall assign temporary addresses from the block "ICAO[1]" shown in Table 7.9-1.

7.2   When requesting a temporary address, the aircraft operator shall supply to ICAO: aircraft identification, type and make of aircraft, name and address of the operator, and an explanation of the reason for the request.

7.2.1 Upon issuance of the temporary address to the aircraft operators, ICAO shall inform the State of Registry of the issuance of the temporary address, reason and duration.

7.3   The aircraft operator shall:

    a)   inform the State of Registry of the temporary assignment and reiterate the request for a permanent address; and
    b)   inform the airframe manufacturer.

7.4   When the permanent aircraft address is obtained from the State of Registry, the operator shall:

    a)   inform ICAO without delay;
    b)   relinquish his/her temporary address; and
    c)   arrange for encoding of the valid unique address within 180 calendar days.

7.5   If a permanent address is not obtained within one year, the aircraft operator shall reapply for a new temporary aircraft address. Under no circumstances shall a temporary aircraft address be used by the aircraft operator for over one year.

Table 7.9-1. Allocation of aircraft addresses to States

Note.— The left-hand column of the 24-bit address patterns represents the most significant bit (MSB) of the address.

State	Number of addresses in block					Allocation of blocks of addresses (a dash represents a bit value equal to 0 or 1)					
	1 024	*4 096*	*32 768*	*262 144*	*1 048 576*						
Afghanistan		*				0 1 1 1	0 0	0 0 0	0 0 0	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Albania	*					0 1 0 1	0 0	0 0 0	0 0 1	0 0	– – – – – – – – –
Algeria			*			0 0 0 0	1 0	1 0 0	– – –	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Angola		*				0 0 0 0	1 0	0 1 0	0 0 0	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Antigua and Barbuda	*					0 0 0 0	1 1	0 0 1	0 1 0	0 0	– – – – – – – – –
Argentina				*		1 1 1 0	0 0	– – –	– – –	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Armenia	*					0 1 1 0	0 0	0 0 0	0 0 0	0 0	– – – – – – – – –
Australia				*		0 1 1 1	1 1	– – –	– – –	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Austria			*			0 1 0 0	0 1	0 0 0	– – –	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Azerbaijan	*					0 1 1 0	0 0	0 0 0	0 0 0	1 0	– – – – – – – – –
Bahamas		*				0 0 0 0	1 0	1 0 1	0 0 0	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Bahrain		*				1 0 0 0	1 0	0 1 0	1 0 0	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Bangladesh		*				0 1 1 1	0 0	0 0 0	0 1 0	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Barbados	*					0 0 0 0	1 0	1 0 1	0 1 0	0 0	– – – – – – – – –
Belarus	*					0 1 0 1	0 0	0 1 0	0 0 0	0 0	– – – – – – – – –
Belgium			*			0 1 0 0	0 1	0 0 1	– – –	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Belize	*					0 0 0 0	1 0	1 0 1	0 1 1	0 0	– – – – – – – – –
Benin	*					0 0 0 0	1 0	0 1 0	1 0 0	0 0	– – – – – – – – –

State	Number of addresses in block					Allocation of blocks of addresses (a dash represents a bit value equal to 0 or 1)
	1 024	*4 096*	*32 768*	*262 144*	*1 048 576*	
Bhutan	*					0110 10 000 000 00 ---------
Bolivia		*				1110 10 010 100 -- ---------
Bosnia and Herzegovina	*					0101 00 010 011 00 ---------
Botswana	*					0000 00 110 000 00 ---------
Brazil				*		1110 01 --- --- -- ---------
Brunei Darussalam	*					1000 10 010 101 00 ---------
Bulgaria			*			0100 01 010 --- -- ---------
Burkina Faso		*				0000 10 011 100 -- ---------
Burundi		*				0000 00 110 010 -- ---------
Cambodia		*				0111 00 001 110 -- ---------
Cameroon		*				0000 00 110 100 -- ---------
Canada				*		1100 00 --- --- -- ---------
Cape Verde	*					0000 10 010 110 00 ---------
Central African Republic		*				0000 01 101 100 -- ---------
Chad		*				0000 10 000 100 -- ---------
Chile		*				1110 10 000 000 -- ---------
China				*		0111 10 --- --- -- ---------
Colombia		*				0000 10 101 100 -- ---------
Comoros	*					0000 00 110 101 00 ---------
Congo		*				0000 00 110 110 -- ---------
Cook Islands	*					1001 00 000 001 00 ---------
Costa Rica		*				0000 10 101 110 -- ---------
Côte d'Ivoire		*				0000 00 111 000 -- ---------
Croatia	*					0101 00 000 001 11 ---------
Cuba		*				0000 10 110 000 -- ---------
Cyprus	*					0100 11 001 000 00 ---------
Czech Republic			*			0100 10 011 --- -- ---------
Democratic People's Republic of Korea			*			0111 00 100 --- -- ---------
Democratic Republic of the Congo		*				0000 10 001 100 -- ---------
Denmark			*			0100 01 011 --- -- ---------
Djibouti	*					0000 10 011 000 00 ---------
Dominican Republic		*				0000 11 000 100 -- ---------
Ecuador		*				1110 10 000 100 -- ---------
Egypt			*			0000 00 010 --- -- ---------
El Salvador		*				0000 10 110 010 -- ---------
Equatorial Guinea		*				0000 01 000 010 -- ---------
Eritrea	*					0010 00 000 010 00 ---------
Estonia	*					0101 00 010 001 00 ---------
Ethiopia		*				0000 01 000 000 -- ---------
Fiji		*				1100 10 001 000 -- ---------
Finland			*			0100 01 100 --- -- ---------
France				*		0011 10 --- --- -- ---------
Gabon		*				0000 00 111 110 -- ---------
Gambia		*				0000 10 011 010 -- ---------
Georgia	*					0101 00 010 100 00 ---------
Germany				*		0011 11 --- --- -- ---------
Ghana		*				0000 01 000 100 -- ---------
Greece			*			0100 01 101 --- -- ---------
Grenada	*					0000 11 001 100 00 ---------
Guatemala		*				0000 10 110 100 -- ---------
Guinea		*				0000 01 000 110 -- ---------
Guinea-Bissau	*					0000 01 001 000 00 ---------
Guyana		*				0000 10 110 110 -- ---------

142

State	Number of addresses in block					Allocation of blocks of addresses (a dash represents a bit value equal to 0 or 1)
	1 024	*4 096*	*32 768*	*262 144*	*1 048 576*	
Haiti		*				0000 10 111 000 -- ---------
Honduras		*				0000 10 111 010 -- ---------
Hungary			*			0100 01 110 --- -- ---------
Iceland		*				0100 11 001 100 -- ---------
India				*		1000 00 --- --- -- ---------
Indonesia		*				1000 10 100 --- -- ---------
Iran, Islamic Republic of		*				0111 00 110 --- -- ---------
Iraq		*				0111 00 101 --- -- ---------
Ireland		*				0100 11 001 010 -- ---------
Israel		*				0111 00 111 --- -- ---------
Italy				*		0011 00 --- --- -- ---------
Jamaica		*				0000 10 111 110 -- ---------
Japan				*		1000 01 --- --- -- ---------
Jordan			*			0111 01 000 --- -- ---------
Kazakhstan	*					0110 10 000 011 00 ---------
Kenya		*				0000 01 001 100 -- ---------
Kiribati	*					1100 10 001 110 00 ---------
Kuwait		*				0111 00 000 110 -- ---------
Kyrgyzstan	*					0110 00 000 001 00 ---------
Lao People's Democratic Republic		*				0111 00 001 000 -- ---------
Latvia	*					0101 00 000 010 11 ---------
Lebanon			*			0111 01 001 --- -- ---------
Lesotho	*					0000 01 001 010 00 ---------
Liberia		*				0000 01 010 000 -- ---------
Libyan Arab Jamahiriya			*			0000 00 011 --- -- ---------
Lithuania	*					0101 00 000 011 11 ---------
Luxembourg	*					0100 11 010 000 00 ---------
Madagascar		*				0000 01 010 100 -- ---------
Malawi		*				0000 01 011 000 -- ---------
Malaysia			*			0111 01 010 --- -- ---------
Maldives	*					0000 01 011 010 00 ---------
Mali		*				0000 01 011 100 -- ---------
Malta	*					0100 11 010 010 00 ---------
Marshall Islands	*					1001 00 000 000 00 ---------
Mauritania	*					0000 01 011 110 00 ---------
Mauritius	*					0000 01 100 000 00 ---------
Mexico			*			0000 11 010 --- -- ---------
Micronesia, Federated States of	*					0110 10 000 001 00 ---------
Monaco	*					0100 11 010 100 00 ---------
Mongolia	*					0110 10 000 010 00 ---------
Montenegro	*					0101 00 010 110 00 ---------
Morocco			*			0000 00 100 --- -- ---------
Mozambique		*				0000 00 000 110 -- ---------
Myanmar		*				0111 00 000 100 -- ---------
Namibia	*					0010 00 000 001 00 ---------
Nauru	*					1100 10 001 010 00 ---------
Nepal		*				0111 00 001 010 -- ---------
Netherlands, Kingdom of the			*			0100 10 000 --- -- ---------
New Zealand			*			1100 10 000 --- -- ---------
Nicaragua		*				0000 11 000 000 -- ---------
Niger		*				0000 01 100 010 -- ---------
Nigeria		*				0000 01 100 100 -- ---------

State	Number of addresses in block					Allocation of blocks of addresses (a dash represents a bit value equal to 0 or 1)					
	1 024	4 096	32 768	262 144	1 048 576						
Norway			*			0 1 0 0	0 1	1 1 1	– – –	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Oman	*					0 1 1 1	0 0	0 0 1	1 0 0	0 0	– – – – – – – – –
Pakistan			*			0 1 1 1	0 1	1 0 0	– – –	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Palau	*					0 1 1 0	1 0	0 0 0	1 0 0	0 0	– – – – – – – – –
Panama		*				0 0 0 0	1 1	0 0 0	0 1 0	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Papua New Guinea		*				1 0 0 0	1 0	0 1 1	0 0 0	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Paraguay		*				1 1 1 0	1 0	0 0 1	0 0 0	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Peru		*				1 1 1 0	1 0	0 0 1	1 0 0	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Philippines			*			0 1 1 1	0 1	0 1 1	– – –	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Poland			*			0 1 0 0	1 0	0 0 1	– – –	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Portugal			*			0 1 0 0	1 0	0 1 0	– – –	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Qatar	*					0 0 0 0	0 1	1 0 1	0 1 0	0 0	– – – – – – – – –
Republic of Korea			*			0 1 1 1	0 0	0 1 1	– – –	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Republic of Moldova	*					0 1 0 1	0 0	0 0 0	1 0 0	1 1	– – – – – – – – –
Romania			*			0 1 0 0	1 0	1 0 0	– – –	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Russian Federation						0 0 0 1	– –	– – –	– – –	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Rwanda		*				0 0 0 0	0 1	1 0 1	1 1 0	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Saint Lucia	*					1 1 0 0	1 0	0 0 1	1 0 0	0 0	– – – – – – – – –
Saint Vincent and the Grenadines	*					0 0 0 0	1 0	1 1 1	1 0 0	0 0	– – – – – – – – –
Samoa	*					1 0 0 1	0 0	0 0 0	0 1 0	0 0	– – – – – – – – –
San Marino	*					0 1 0 1	0 0	0 0 0	0 0 0	0 0	– – – – – – – – –
Sao Tome and Principe	*					0 0 0 0	1 0	0 1 1	1 1 0	0 0	– – – – – – – – –
Saudi Arabia			*			0 1 1 1	0 0	0 1 0	– – –	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Senegal		*				0 0 0 0	0 1	1 1 0	0 0 0	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Serbia			*			0 1 0 0	1 1	0 0 0	– – –	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Seychelles	*					0 0 0 0	0 1	1 1 0	1 0 0	0 0	– – – – – – – – –
Sierra Leone	*					0 0 0 0	0 1	1 1 0	1 1 0	0 0	– – – – – – – – –
Singapore			*			0 1 1 1	0 1	1 0 1	– – –	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Slovakia	*					0 1 0 1	0 0	0 0 0	1 0 1	1 1	– – – – – – – – –
Slovenia	*					0 1 0 1	0 0	0 0 0	1 1 0	1 1	– – – – – – – – –
Solomon Islands	*					1 0 0 0	1 0	0 1 0	1 1 1	0 0	– – – – – – – – –
Somalia		*				0 0 0 0	0 1	1 1 1	0 0 0	– –	– – – – – – – – –
South Africa			*			0 0 0 0	0 0	0 0 1	– – –	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Spain				*		0 0 1 1	0 1	– – –	– – –	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Sri Lanka			*			0 1 1 1	0 1	1 1 0	– – –	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Sudan		*				0 0 0 0	0 1	1 1 1	1 0 0	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Suriname		*				0 0 0 0	1 1	0 0 1	0 0 0	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Swaziland	*					0 0 0 0	0 1	1 1 1	0 1 0	0 0	– – – – – – – – –
Sweden			*			0 1 0 0	1 0	1 0 1	– – –	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Switzerland			*			0 1 0 0	1 0	1 1 0	– – –	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Syrian Arab Republic			*			0 1 1 1	0 1	1 1 1	– – –	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Tajikistan	*					0 1 0 1	0 0	0 1 0	1 0 1	0 0	– – – – – – – – –
Thailand			*			1 0 0 0	1 0	0 0 0	– – –	– –	– – – – – – – – –
The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	*					0 1 0 1	0 0	0 1 0	0 1 0	0 0	– – – – – – – – –
Togo		*				0 0 0 0	1 0	0 0 1	0 0 0	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Tonga	*					1 1 0 0	1 0	0 0 1	1 0 1	0 0	– – – – – – – – –
Trinidad and Tobago		*				0 0 0 0	1 1	0 0 0	1 1 0	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Tunisia			*			0 0 0 0	0 0	1 0 1	– – –	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Turkey			*			0 1 0 0	1 0	1 1 1	– – –	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Turkmenistan	*					0 1 1 0	0 0	0 0 0	0 0 1	1 0	– – – – – – – – –
Uganda		*				0 0 0 0	0 1	1 0 1	0 0 0	– –	– – – – – – – – –
Ukraine			*			0 1 0 1	0 0	0 0 1	– – –	– –	– – – – – – – – –
United Arab Emirates		*				1 0 0 0	1 0	0 1 0	1 1 0	– –	– – – – – – – – –

144

State	Number of addresses in block					Allocation of blocks of addresses (a dash represents a bit value equal to 0 or 1)
	1 024	4 096	32 768	262 144	1 048 576	
United Kingdom				*		0 1 0 0 0 0 – – – – – – – – – – – – – – – –
United Republic of Tanzania		*				0 0 0 0 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 – – – – – – – – – –
United States						1 0 1 0 – – – – – – – – – – – – – – – – – –
Uruguay		*				1 1 1 0 1 0 0 1 0 0 0 0 – – – – – – – – – –
Uzbekistan	*					0 1 0 1 0 0 0 0 0 1 1 1 1 1 – – – – – – – –
Vanuatu	*					1 1 0 0 1 0 0 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 – – – – – – – –
Venezuela			*			0 0 0 0 1 1 0 1 1 – – – – – – – – – – – – –
Viet Nam			*			1 0 0 0 1 0 0 0 1 – – – – – – – – – – – – –
Yemen		*				1 0 0 0 1 0 0 1 0 0 0 0 – – – – – – – – – –
Zambia		*				0 0 0 0 1 0 0 0 1 0 1 0 – – – – – – – – – –
Zimbabwe	*					0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0 0 0 0 – – – – – – – –
Other allocations						
ICAO[1]			*			1 1 1 1 0 0 0 0 0 – – – – – – – – – – – – –
ICAO[2]	*					1 0 0 0 1 0 0 1 1 0 0 1 0 0 – – – – – – – –
ICAO[2]	*					1 1 1 1 0 0 0 0 1 0 0 1 0 0 – – – – – – – –

1. ICAO administers this block for assigning temporary aircraft addresses as described in section 7.

2. Block allocated for special use in the interest of flight safety.

7.10 POINT-TO-MULTIPOINT COMMUNIATIONS

7.10.1 SERVICE VIA SATELLITE FOR THE DISSEMINATION OF AERONAUTICAL INFORMATION

7.10.1.1 Point-to-multipoint telecommunication service via satellite to support the dissemination of aeronautical information shall be based on full-time, non-pre-emptible, protected services as defined in the relevant CCITT Recommendations.

7.10.2 SERVICE VIA SATELLITE FOR THE DISSEMINATION OF WAFS PRODUCTS

7.10.2.1 System characteristics shall include the following:

a) frequency - C-band, earth-to-satellite, 6 GHz band, satellite-to-earth, 4 GHz band;
b) capacity with effective signalling rate of not less than 9 600 bits/s;
c) bit error rates - better than 1 in 10^7;
d) forward error correction; and
e) availability 99.95 per cent.

7.11 HF DATA LINK

7.11.1 DEFINITIONS AND SYSTEM CAPABILITIES

Note - The following Standards and Recommended Practices are specific to the high frequency data l ink (HFDL) a nd are i n a ddition t o t he requirements s pecified in t he ITU R adio Regulations (Appendix 27). The HFDL is a constituent mobile subnetwork of the aeronautical telecommunication network (ATN), operating in the aeronautical m obile (R) hi gh f requency bands. I n ad dition, t he HFDL may provide no n-ATN f unctions, such a s d irect l ink se rvice (DLS). The HFDL system must enable aircraft to exchange data with ground-based users.

7.11.1.1 DEFINITIONS

Coded chip. A "1" or "0" output of the rate ½ or ¼ convolutional code encoder.

Designated operational coverage (DOC) area. The area in which a particular service is provided and in which the service is afforded frequency protection.

Note - This area may, after proper coordination to ensure frequency protection, extend to areas outside the allotment areas contained in Appendix S27 to the Radio Regulations.

Direct link service (DLS). A data communications service which makes no attempt to automatically correct errors, detected or undetected, at the link layer of the air-ground communications path. (Error control may be effected by end-user systems.)

High frequency network protocol data unit (HFNPDU). User data packet.

Link protocol data unit (LPDU). Data unit which encapsulates a segment of an HFNPDU.

M-ary phase shift keying (M-PSK) modulation. A digital phase modulation that causes the phase of the carrier waveform to take on one of a set of M values.

Media access protocol data unit (MPDU). Data unit which encapsulates one or more LPDUs.

M-PSK symbol. One of the M possible phase shifts of the M-PSK modulated carrier representing a group of $\log_2 M$ coded chips.

Peak envelope power (PEP). The peak power of the modulated signal supplied by the transmitter to the antenna transmission line.

Physical layer protocol data unit (PPDU). Data unit passed to the physical layer for transmission, or decoded by the physical layer after reception.

Quality of service (QOS). The information relating to data transfer characteristics used by various communications protocols to achieve various levels of performance for network users.

Required communication performance (RCP). A statement of the performance requirements for operational communication in support of specific ATM functions (see Manual on Required Communication Performance (RCP) (Doc 9869)).

Reliable link service (RLS). A data communications service provided by the subnetwork which automatically provides for error control over its link through error detection and requested retransmission of signal units found to be in error.

Squitter protocol data unit (SPDU). Data packet which is broadcast every 32 seconds by an HFDL ground station on each of its operating frequencies, and which contains link management information.

7.11.2   HF DATA LINK SYSTEM

7.11.2.1   System architecture

The HFDL system shall consist of one or more ground and aircraft station subsystems, which implement the HFDL protocol (see 7.11.3). The HFDL system shall also include a ground management subsystem (see 7.11.4).

7.11.2.1.1   AIRCRAFT AND GROUND STATION SUBSYSTEMS

The HFDL aircraft station subsystem and the HFDL ground station subsystem shall include the following functions:

a) HF transmission and reception;

b) data modulation and demodulation; and

c) HFDL protocol implementation and frequency selection.

7.11.2.2   Operational coverage

Frequency assignments for HFDL shall be protected throughout their designated operational coverage (DOC) area.

Note 1 - DOC areas m ay b e different f rom c urrent M WARAs o r R DARAs a s d efined i n Appendix 27 to the ITU Radio Regulations.

Note 2 — Additional coordination with ITU is required in cases where DOC areas are not in conformity with the allotment areas specified in the ITU Radio Regulations.

7.11.2.3   Requirements for carriage of HFDL equipment

Requirements for mandatory carriage of HFDL equipment shall be made on the basis of regional air navigation agreements that specify the airspace of operation and the implementation timescale.

7.11.2.3.1   NOTICE

The agreement above shall provide advance notice of at least two years for the mandatory carriage of airborne systems.

7.11.2.4   Ground station networking

7.11.2.4.1 HFDL ground station subsystems shall interconnect through a common ground management subsystem.

Note - This provides a distributed subnetwork, with a subnetwork point of attachment (SNPA), depending on the method of implementation, which allows for the maintenance of virtual circuit connections as aircraft stations transition between designated operational coverage areas. The distribution may be multi-regional or worldwide.

7.11.2.5   Ground station synchronization

Synchronization of HFDL ground station subsystems shall be to within ±25 ms of UTC. For any station not operating within ±25 ms of UTC, appropriate notification shall be made to all aircraft and ground station subsystems to allow for continued system operation.

7.11.2.6   Quality of service

7.11.2.6.1   RESIDUAL PACKET ERROR RATE

The undetected error rate for a network user packet which contains between 1 and 128 octets of user data shall be equal to or less than 1 in 10^6.

7.11.2.6.2   SPEED OF SERVICE

Transit and transfer delays for network user packets (128 octets) with priorities defined in Part I, Chapter 4, Table 4-26 for message priorities 7 through 14, shall not exceed the values of indicated in Table 7.11-1 at the end of this Chapter.

7.11.3   HF DATA LINK PROTOCOL

The HFDL protocol shall consist of a physical layer, a link layer, and a subnetwork layer, as specified below.

Note - The HFDL p rotocol i s a l ayered pr otocol and i s c ompatible w ith t he o pen s ystems interconnection (OSI) reference model. It pe rmits the H FDL t o f unction a s a n aeronautical telecommunication n etwork (ATN)-compatible s ubnetwork. T he details of the protocol a re described in the Manual on HF Data Link *(Doc 9741).*

7.11.3.1 Physical layer RF characteristics

The aircraft and ground stations shall access the physical medium operating in simplex mode.

7.11.3.1.1 FREQUENCY BANDS

HFDL installations shall be capable of operating at any single sideband (SSB) carrier (reference) frequency available to the aeronautical mobile (R) service in the band 2.8 to 22 MHz, and in compliance with the relevant provisions of the Radio Regulations.

7.11.3.1.2 CHANNELS

Channel utilization shall be in conformity with the table of carrier (reference) frequencies of Appendix 27 to the ITU Radio Regulations.

7.11.3.1.3 TUNING

The equipment shall be capable of operating on integral multiples of 1 kHz.

7.11.3.1.4 SIDEBAND

The sideband used for transmission shall be on the higher side of its carrier (reference) frequency.

7.11.3.1.5 MODULATION

HFDL shall employ M-ary phase shift keying (M-PSK) to modulate the radio frequency carrier at the assigned frequency. The symbol rate shall be 1 800 symbols per second ±10 parts per million (i.e. 0.018 symbols per second). The value of M and the information data rate shall be as specified in Table 7.11-2 at the end of this Chapter.

7.11.3.1.5.1 M-PSK CARRIER

The M-PSK carrier expressed mathematically shall be defined as:

$$s(t) = A\Sigma(p(t-kT)\cos[2\pi f_0 t + \varphi(k)]), \quad k = 0, 1 \ldots, N-1$$

where:

N = number of M-PSK symbols in transmitted physical layer protocol data unit (PPDU)

s(t) = analog waveform or signal at time t

A = peak amplitude

f_0 = SSB carrier (reference) + 1 440 Hz

T = M-PSK symbol period (1/1 800 s)

$\varphi(k)$ = phase of kth M-PSK symbol

p(t-kT) = pulse shape of kth M-PSK symbol at time t.

Note — The number of M-PSK symbols s ent, N, d efines the l ength (duration = NT seconds) of the PPDU. These parameters are defined in the Manual on HF Data Link *(Doc 9741).*

7.11.3.1.5.2 PULSE SHAPE

The pulse shape, p(t), shall determine the spectral distribution of the transmitted signal. The Fourier transform of the pulse shape, P(f), shall be defined by:

P(f) = 1,   if $0 < |f| < (1 - b)/2T$

P(f) = cos {π(2|f|T - 1 + b)/4b},   if $(1 - b)/2T < |f| < (1 + b)/2T$

P(f) = 0,   if $|f| > (1 + b)/2T$

where the spectral roll-off parameter, b = 0.31, has been chosen so that the -20 dB points of the signal are at SSB carrier (reference) + 290 Hz and SSB carrier (reference) + 2 590 Hz and the peak-to-average power ratio of the waveform is less than 5 dB.

7.11.3.1.6 TRANSMITTER STABILITY

The basic frequency stability of the transmitting function shall be better than:

    a)   ±20 Hz for HFDL aircraft station subsystems; and
    b)   ±10 Hz for HFDL ground station subsystems.

7.11.3.1.7 RECEIVER STABILITY

The basic frequency stability of the receiving function shall be such that, with the transmitting function stability specified in 7.11.3.1.6, the overall frequency difference between ground and airborne functions achieved in service does not exceed 70 Hz.

7.11.3.1.8 PROTECTION

A 15 dB desired to undesired (D/U) signal ratio shall apply for the protection of co-channel assignments for HFDL as follows:

    a)   data versus data;
    b)   data versus voice; and
    c)   voice versus data.

7.11.3.1.9 CLASS OF EMISSION

The class of emission shall be 2K80J2DEN.

7.11.3.1.10 ASSIGNED FREQUENCY

The HFDL assigned frequency shall be 1 400 Hz higher than the SSB carrier (reference) frequency.

Note - By convention, the HFDL assigned frequency is offset from the SSB carrier (reference) frequency by 1 400 Hz. The HFDL M-PSK carrier of the digital modulation is offset from the SSB carrier (reference) frequency by 1 440 Hz. The digital modulation is fully contained within the same overall channel bandwidth as the voice signal and complies with the provisions of Appendix 27 to the ITU Radio Regulations.

7.11.3.1.11 EMISSION LIMITS

For HFDL aircraft and ground station transmitters, the peak envelope power (P_p) of any emission on any discrete frequency shall be less than the peak envelope power (P_p) of the transmitter in accordance with the following (see Figure 7.11-1 at the end of Chapter 7.11, CARANS Part 7)

a)   on any frequency between 1.5 kHz and 4.5 kHz lower than the HFDL assigned frequency, and on any frequency between 1.5 kHz and 4.5 kHz higher than the HFDL assigned frequency: at least 30 dB;

b)   on any frequency between 4.5 kHz and 7.5 kHz lower than the HFDL assigned frequency, and on any frequency between 4.5 kHz and 7.5 kHz higher than the HFDL assigned frequency: at least 38 dB; and

c)   on any frequency lower than 7.5 kHz below the HFDL assigned frequency and on any frequency higher than 7.5 kHz above the HFDL assigned frequency:

  1)   HFDL aircraft station transmitters: 43 dB;

  2)   HFDL ground station transmitters up to and including 50 W:

  $[43 + 10 \log_{10} P_p(W)]$ dB; and

  3)   HFDL ground station transmitters more than 50 W: 60 dB.

7.11.3.1.12   POWER

7.11.3.1.12.1 *Ground s tation in stallations*. The peak envelope power (P_p) supplied to the antenna transmission line shall not exceed a maximum value of 6 kW as provided for in Appendix 27 of the Radio Regulations.

7.11.3.1.12.2   *Aircraft station installations*. The peak envelope power supplied to the antenna transmission line shall not exceed 400 W, except as provided for in Appendix 27/62 of the Radio Regulations.

7.11.3.1.13   UNDESIRED SIGNAL REJECTION

For HFDL aircraft and ground station receivers, undesired input signals shall be attenuated in accordance with the following:

  a)   on any frequency between f_c and (f_c - 300 Hz), or between (f_c + 2 900 Hz) and (f_c + 3 300 Hz): at least 35 dB below the peak of the desired signal level; and

  b)   on any frequency below (f_c - 300 Hz), or above (f_c + 3 300 Hz): at least 60 dB below the peak of the desired signal level,

where f_c is the carrier (reference) frequency.

7.11.3.1.14   RECEIVER RESPONSE TO TRANSIENTS

The receiving function shall recover from an instantaneous increase in RF power at the antenna terminal of 60 dB within 10 milliseconds. The receiving function should recover from an instantaneous decrease in RF power at the antenna terminal of 60 dB within 25 milliseconds.

7.11.3.2   **Physical layer functions**

7.11.3.2.1   FUNCTIONS

The functions provided by the physical layer shall include the following:

  a)   transmitter and receiver control;
  b)   transmission of data; and
  c)   reception of data.

7.11.3.2.2   TRANSMITTER AND RECEIVER CONTROL

The HFDL physical layer shall implement the transmitter/receiver switching and frequency tuning as commanded by the link layer. The physical layer shall perform transmitter keying on demand from the link layer to transmit a packet.

7.11.3.2.2.1   *TRANSMITTER TO RECEIVER TURNAROUND TIME*

The transmitted power level shall decay at least by 10 dB within 100 milliseconds after completing a transmission. An HFDL station subsystem shall be capable of receiving and demodulating, with nominal performance, an incoming signal within 200 milliseconds of the start of the subsequent receive slot.

7.11.3.2.2.2   *RECEIVER TO TRANSMITTER TURNAROUND TIME*

An HFDL station subsystem shall provide nominal output power within plus or minus 1 dB to the antenna transmission line within 200 milliseconds of the start of the transmit slot.

7.11.3.2.3   TRANSMISSION OF DATA

Transmission of data shall be accomplished using a time division multiple access (TDMA) technique. The HFDL data link ground station subsystems shall maintain TDMA frame and slot synchronization for the HFDL system. To ensure that slot synchronization is maintained, each HF data link modulator shall begin outputting a pre-key segment at the beginning of a time slot plus or minus 10 milliseconds.

7.11.3.2.3.1   *TDMA STRUCTURE*

Each TDMA frame shall be 32 seconds. Each TDMA frame shall be divided into thirteen equal duration slots as follows:

   a)   the first slot of each TDMA frame shall be reserved for use by the HFDL ground station subsystem to broadcast link management data in SPDU packets; and

   b)   the remaining slots shall be designated either as uplink slots, downlink slots reserved for specific HFDL aircraft station subsystems, or as downlink random access slots for use by all HFDL aircraft station subsystems on a contention basis. These TDMA slots shall be assigned on a dynamic basis using a combination of reservation, polling and random access assignments.

7.11.3.2.3.2   *BROADCAST*

The HFDL ground station subsystem shall broadcast a squitter protocol data unit (SPDU) every 32 seconds on each of its operating frequencies.

Note — Details on t he TDMA f rame a nd s lot structures, p re-key s egment, d ata structures, including the SPDU, are contained in the Manual on HF Data Link *(Doc 9741).*

7.11.3.2.4   RECEPTION OF DATA

7.11.3.2.4.1   *FREQUENCY SEARCH*

Each HFDL aircraft station shall automatically search the assigned frequencies until it detects an operating frequency.

7.11.3.2.4.2   *RECEPTION OF PPDUS*

The HF data link receiver shall provide the means to detect, synchronize, demodulate and decode PPDUs modulated according to the waveform defined in 7.11.3.1.5, subject to the following distortion:

a) the 1 440 Hz audio carrier offset by plus or minus 70 Hz;

b) discrete and/or diffuse multipath distortion with up to 5 ms multipath spread;

c) multipath amplitude fading with up to 2 Hz two-sided RMS Doppler spread and Rayleigh statistics; and

c) additive Gaussian and broadband impulsive noise with varying amplitude and random arrival times.

Note - Reference CCIR Report 549-2.

7.11.3.2.4.3   *DECODING OF PPDUS*

Upon receipt of the preamble segment the receiver shall:

a) detect the beginning of a burst of data;

b) measure and correct the frequency offset between the transmitter and receiver due to Doppler shift and transmitter/receiver frequency offsets;

c) determine the data rate and interleaver settings to use during data demodulation;

d) achieve M-PSK symbol synchronization; and

e) train the equalizer.

7.11.3.2.4.4   *SYNCHRONIZATION*

Each HFDL aircraft station subsystem shall synchronize its slot timing to that of its corresponding ground station with respect to the reception time of the last received SPDU.

7.11.3.2.4.5   *SPECIFIED PACKET ERROR RATE PERFORMANCE*

7.11.3.2.4.5.1   The number of HFDL media access protocol data units (MPDUs) received with one or more bit errors shall not exceed 5 per cent of the total number of MPDUs received, when using a 1.8 second interleaver and under the signalin-space conditions shown in Table 7.11-3 at the end of this Chapter.

7.11.3.2.4.5.2   The number of HFDL MPDUs received with one or more bit errors should not exceed 5 per cent of the total number of MPDUs received, when using a 1.8 second interleaver under the conditions shown in Table 7.11-3a at the end of this Chapter.

7.11.3.3   **Link layer**

Note - Details o n link l ayer f unctions a re c ontained i n t he Manual on HF Data Link *(Doc 9741).*

The link layer shall provide control functions for the physical layer, link management and data service protocols.

7.11.3.3.1   CONTROL FUNCTIONS

The link layer shall pass commands for frequency tuning, transmitter keying and transmitter/receiver switching to the physical layer.

7.11.3.3.2   LINK MANAGEMENT

The link layer shall manage TDMA slot assignments, log-on and log-off procedures, ground station and aircraft station TDMA synchronization, and other functions necessary, taking into account message priority, for the establishment and maintenance of communications.

7.11.3.3.3   DATA SERVICE PROTOCOLS

The link layer shall support a reliable link service (RLS) protocol and a direct link service (DLS) protocol.

7.11.3.3.3.1 *RLS*

The RLS protocol shall be used to exchange acknowledged user data packets between aircraft and ground peer link layers.

7.11.3.3.3.2 *DLS*

The DLS protocol shall be used to broadcast unsegmented uplink high frequency network protocol data units (HFNPDUs) and other HFNPDUs not requiring automatic retransmission by the link layer.

7.11.3.4 Subnetwork layer

Note - Details on subnetwork layer protocols and services are contained in the Manual on HF Data Link *(Doc 9741)*.

7.11.3.4.1 PACKET DATA

The HFDL subnetwork layer in the HFDL aircraft station subsystem and HFDL ground station subsystem shall provide connection-oriented packet data service by establishing subnetwork connections between subnetwork service users.

7.11.3.4.2 CONNECTIVITY NOTIFICATION SERVICE

The HFDL subnetwork layer in the HFDL aircraft station subsystem shall provide the additional connectivity notification service by sending connectivity notification event messages to the attached ATN router.

7.11.3.4.2.1 *CONNECTIVITY NOTIFICATION EVENT MESSAGES*

The connectivity notification service shall send connectivity notification event messages to the attached ATN router through the subnetwork access function.

7.11.3.4.3 HFDL SUBNETWORK LAYER FUNCTIONS

The HFDL subnetwork layer in both the HFDL aircraft station subsystem and HFDL ground station subsystem shall include the following three functions:

a) HFDL subnetwork dependent (HFSND) function;
b) subnetwork access function; and
c) interworking function.

7.11.3.4.3.1 *HFSND FUNCTION*

The HFSND function shall perform the HFSND protocol between each pair of HFDL aircraft station subsystems and HFDL ground station subsystems by exchanging HFNPDUs. It shall perform the HFSND protocol aircraft function in the HFDL aircraft station subsystem and the HFSND protocol ground function in the HFDL ground station subsystem.

7.11.3.4.3.2 *SUBNETWORK ACCESS FUNCTION*

The subnetwork access function shall perform the ISO 8208 protocol between the HFDL aircraft station subsystem or HFDL ground station subsystem and the attached routers by exchanging ISO 8208 packets. It shall perform the ISO 8208 DCE function in the HFDL aircraft station subsystem and the HFDL ground station subsystem.

7.11.3.4.3.3   *INTERWORKING FUNCTION*

The interworking function shall provide the necessary harmonization functions between the HFSND, the subnetwork access and the connectivity notification functions.

7.11.4   GROUND MANAGEMENT SUBSYSTEM

Note — Details on the ground management subsystem functions and interfaces are contained in the Manual on HF Data Link *(Doc 9741).*

7.11.4.1   Management functions

The ground management subsystem shall perform the functions necessary to establish and maintain communications channels between the HFDL ground and aircraft station subsystems.

7.11.4.2   Management/control information exchange

The ground management subsystem shall interface with the ground station subsystem in order to exchange control information required for frequency management, system table management, log status management, channel management, and quality of service (QOS) data collection.

TABLES FOR CAR-ANS 7.11

Table 7.11-1 Transfer delays

	Direction	*Priority*	*Delay*
Transit delay	To-aircraft	7 through 14	45 s
	From-aircraft	7 through 14	60 s
Transfer delay (95 percentile)	To-aircraft	11 through 14 7 through 10	90 s 120 s
	From-aircraft	11 through 14 7 through 10	150 s 250 s

Table 7.11-2 Value of M and information data rate

M	*Information data rate* *(bits per second)*
2	300 or 600
4	1 200
8	1 800

Note.— When M e quals t he v alue 2, t he data rate m ay be 3 00 o r 600 bi ts pe r second a s determined b y t he channel c oding rate. T he v alue of M   may c hange f rom one dat a transmission t o a nother depending o n t he dat a rate selected. The channel c oding r ate i s described in the Manual on HF Data Link *(Doc 9741).*

Table 7.11-3 HF signal-in-space conditions

Data rate (bits per second)	Number of channel paths	Multipath spread (milliseconds)	Fading bandwidth (Hz) per CCIR Report 5492	Frequency offset (Hz)	Signal to noise ratio (dB) in a 3 kHz bandwidth	MPDU size (octets)
1 200	1 fixed	–	–	40	4	256
1 800	2 fading	2	1	40	16	400
1 200	2 fading	2	1	40	11.5	256
600	2 fading	2	1	40	8	128
300	2 fading	2	1	40	5	64

Table 7.11-3a HF signal-in-space conditions

Data rate (bits per second)	Number of channel paths	Multipath spread (milliseconds)	Fading bandwidth (Hz) per CCIR Report 5492	Frequency offset (Hz)	Signal to noise ratio (dB) in a 3 kHz bandwidth	MPDU size (octets)
1 200	2 fading	4	1	40	13	256
1 200	2 fading	2	2	40	11.5	256

FIGURE FOR CAR-ANS 7.11
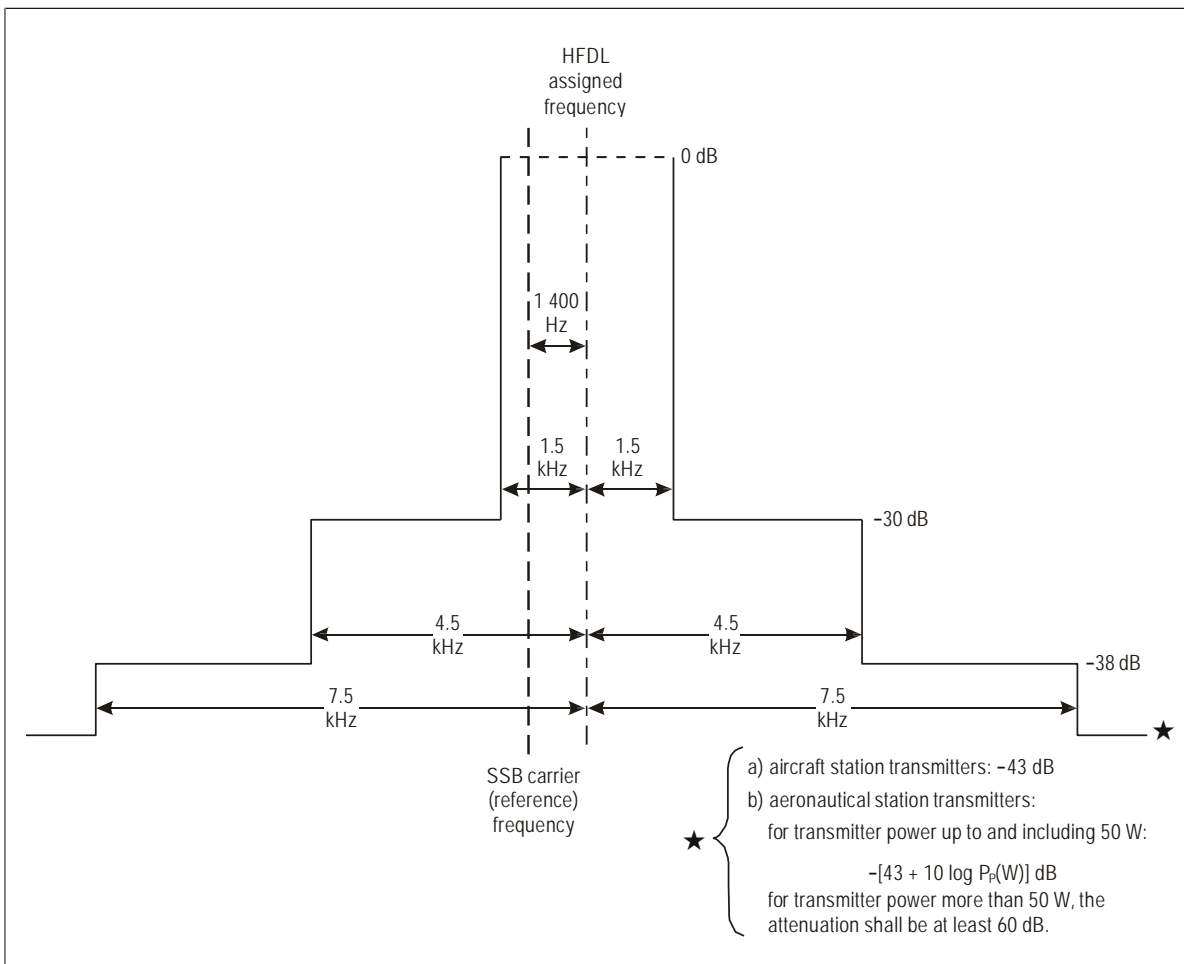
Figure 7.11-1.   Required spectrum limits (in terms of peak power) for HFDL aircraft and ground station transmitters

7.12 UNIVERSAL ACCESS TRANSCEIVER (UAT)

7.12.1 DEFINITIONS AND OVERALL SYSTEM CHARACTERISTICS

7.12.1.1 DEFINITIONS

High performance receiver. A UAT receiver with enhanced selectivity to further improve the rejection of adjacent frequency DME interference (see 7.12.3.2.2 for further details).

Optimum sampling point. The optimum sampling point of a received UAT bit stream is at the nominal centre of each bit period, when the frequency offset is either plus or minus 312.5 kHz.

Power measurement point (PMP). A cable connects the antenna to the UAT equipment. The PMP is the end of that cable that attaches to the antenna. All power measurements are considered as being made at the PMP unless otherwise specified. The cable connecting the UAT equipment to the antenna is assumed to have 3 dB of loss.

Pseudorandom message data block. Several UAT requirements state that performance will be tested using pseudorandom message data blocks. Pseudorandom message data blocks should have statistical properties that are nearly indistinguishable from those of a true random selection of bits. For instance, each bit should have (nearly) equal probability of being a ONE or a ZERO, independent of its neighbouring bits. There should be a large number of such pseudorandom message data blocks for each message type (Basic ADS-B, Long ADS-B or Ground Uplink) to provide sufficient independent data for statistical performance measurements. For an example of how to provide suitable pseudorandom message data blocks, refer to Section 2.3 of Part 1 of the *Manual on the Universal Access Transceiver (UAT)* (Doc 9861).

Service volume. A part of the facility coverage where the facility provides a particular service in accordance with relevant SARPs and within which the facility is afforded frequency protection.

Standard UAT receiver. A general purpose UAT receiver satisfying the minimum rejection requirements of interference from adjacent frequency distance measuring equipment (DME) (see 7.12.3.2.2 for further details).

Successful message reception (SMR). The function within the UAT receiver for declaring a received message as valid for passing to an application that uses received UAT messages. See Section 4 of Part I of the *Manual on the Universal Access Transceiver (UAT)* (Doc 9861) for a detailed description of the procedure to be used by the UAT receiver for declaring successful message reception.

UAT ADS-B message. A message broadcasted once per second by each aircraft to convey state vector and other information. UAT ADS-B messages can be in one of two forms depending on the amount of information to be transmitted in a given second: the *Basic UAT ADS-B Message* or the *Long UAT ADS-B Message* (see 7.12.4.4.1 for definition of each). UAT ground stations can support traffic information service-broadcast (TIS-B) through transmission of individual ADS-B messages in the ADS-B segment of the UAT frame.

UAT ground uplink message. A message broadcasted by ground stations, within the ground segment of the UAT frame, to convey flight information such as text and graphical weather data, advisories, and other aeronautical information, to aircraft that are in the service volume of the ground station (see 7.12.4.4.2 for further details).

Universal access transceiver (UAT). A broadcast data link operating on 978 MHz, with a modulation rate of 1.041667 Mbps.

7.12.1.2   UAT overall system characteristics of aircraft and ground stations

Note — Details on t echnical r equirements related t o t he i mplementation of UAT S ARPs are contained in Part I of the Manual on the Universal Access Transceiver (UAT) *(Doc 9861). Part II of t he* Manual on the Universal Access Transceiver *(UAT) (Doc 9861) (in preparation) wi ll provide additional guidance material.*

7.12.1.2.1   TRANSMISSION FREQUENCY

The transmission frequency shall be 978 MHz.

7.12.1.2.2   FREQUENCY STABILITY

The radio frequency of the UAT equipment shall not vary more than ±0.002 per cent (20 ppm) from the assigned frequency.

7.12.1.2.3   TRANSMIT POWER

7.12.1.2.3.1   *TRANSMIT POWER LEVELS*

UAT equipment shall operate at one of the power levels shown in Table 7.12-1 at the end of Chapter 7.12, CARANS Part 7.

7.12.1.2.3.2   *MAXIMUM POWER*

The maximum equivalent isotropically radiated power (EIRP) for a UAT aircraft or ground station shall not exceed +58 dBm.

Note — For e xample, t he m aximum E IRP l isted a bove c ould r esult f rom t he m aximum allowable ai rcraft t ransmitter p ower shown in Table 7 .12-1 at the end of this Chapter *with a maximum antenna gain of 4 dBi.*

7.12.1.2.3.3   *TRANSMIT MASK*

The spectrum of a UAT ADS-B message transmission modulated with pseudorandom message data blocks (MDB) shall fall within the limits specified in Table 7.12-2 at the end of this Chapter when measured in a 100 kHz bandwidth.

7.12.1.2.4   SPURIOUS EMISSIONS

Spurious emissions shall be kept at the lowest value which the state of the technique and the nature of the service permit.

Note — Appendix 3 o f t he I TU R adio R egulations requires t hat t ransmitting stations shall conform t o t he m aximum permitted power l evels f or s purious e missions or f or unwanted emissions in the spurious domain.

7.12.1.2.5   POLARIZATION

The design polarization of emissions shall be vertical.

7.12.1.2.6   TIME/AMPLITUDE PROFILE OF UAT MESSAGE TRANSMISSION

The time/amplitude profile of a UAT message transmission shall meet the following requirements, in which the reference time is defined as the beginning of the first bit of the synchronization sequence (see 7.12.4.4.1.1, 7.12.4.4.2.1) appearing at the output port of the equipment.

Notes.—

1. A ll power requirements for subparagraphs "a" through "f" below apply to the PMP. For installations that support t ransmitter diversity, t he RF power o utput on th e n on-selected antenna port should be at least 20 dB below the level on the selected port.

2. A ll power requirements for subparagraphs "a" and "f" assume a 300 kHz measurement bandwidth. All power requirements for subparagraphs "b", "c", "d" and "e" assume a 2 MHz measurement bandwidth.

3. The beginning of a bit is 1/2 bit period prior to the optimum sample point.

4. These requirements are depicted graphically in Figure 7.12-2 at the end of this Chapter.

a)   Prior to 8 bit periods before the reference time, the RF output power at the PMP shall not exceed -80 dBm.

Note - This u nwanted r adiated po wer r estriction is ne cessary to ensure that t he U AT transmitting subsystem does not prevent closely located UAT receiving equipment on the same aircraft from meeting i ts r equirements. It as sumes t hat t he i solation between t ransmitter and receiver equipment at the PMP exceeds 20 dB.

b)   Between 8 and 6 bit periods prior to the reference time, the RF output power at the PMP shall remain at least 20 dB below the minimum power requirement for the UAT equipment class.

Note - Guidance on de finition of UAT e quipment c lasses will be p rovided in Part II of t he Manual on the Universal Access Transceiver (UAT) *(Doc 9861) (in preparation).*

c)   During the Active state, defined as beginning at the reference time and continuing for the duration of the message, the RF output power at the PMP shall be greater than or equal to the minimum power requirement for the UAT equipment class.

d)   The RF output power at the PMP shall not exceed the maximum power for the UAT equipment class at any time during the Active state.

e)   Within 6 bit periods after the end of the Active state, the RF output power at the PMP shall be at a level at least 20 dB below the minimum power requirement for the UAT equipment class.

f)   Within 8 bit periods after the end of the Active state, the RF output power at the PMP shall fall to a level not to exceed -80 dBm.

Note - This unwanted radiated p ower restriction i s ne cessary t o e nsure t hat t he transmitting subsystem does not prevent closely located UAT receiving equipment on the same aircraft from meeting i ts requirements. I t a ssumes t hat t he i solation between t ransmitter a nd re ceiver equipment at the PMP exceeds 20 dB.

7.12.1.3   Mandatory carriage requirements

Requirements for mandatory carriage of UAT equipment shall be made on the basis of regional air navigation agreements which specify the airspace of operation and the implementation timescales for the carriage of equipment, including the appropriate lead time.

Note - No changes wi ll be required t o ai rcraft systems o r ground systems o perating solely i n regions not using UAT.

7.12.2   SYSTEM CHARACTERISTICS OF THE GROUND INSTALLATION

7.12.2.1   Ground station transmitting function

7.12.2.1.1 GROUND STATION TRANSMITTER POWER

7.12.2.1.1.1   *The effective radiated power should shall be such as to provide a field strength of at least 280 microvolts per metre (minus 97 dB W/m^2) within the service volume of the facility on the basis of free-space propagation.*

Note - This is determined on the basis of delivering a -91 dBm (corresponds to 200 microvolts per metre) signal level at the PMP (assuming an omnidirectional antenna). The 280 µV/m recommendation corresponds to the delivery of a -88 dBm signal level at the PMP of the receiving equipment. The 3 dB difference between -88 dBm and -91 dBm provides margin for excess path loss over free-space propagation.

7.12.2.2   Ground station receiving function

Note.— An example ground station receiver is discussed in Section 2.5 of Part II of the Manual on the Universal Access Transceiver (UAT) *(Doc 9861), with UAT air-to-ground performance estimates consistent with use of that receiver provided in Appendix B of that manual*.

7.12.3   SYSTEM CHARACTERISTICS OF THE AIRCRAFT INSTALLATION

7.12.3.1   Aircraft transmitting function

7.12.3.1.1   AIRCRAFT TRANSMITTER POWER

The effective radiated power shall be such as to provide a field strength of at least 225 microvolts per metre (minus 99 dBW/m^2) on the basis of free-space propagation, at ranges and altitudes appropriate to the operational conditions pertaining to the areas over which the aircraft is operated. Transmitter power shall not exceed 54 dBm at the PMP.

Note 1 - The above field strength is determined on the basis of delivering a -93 dBm (corresponds to 160 microvolts per metre) signal level at the PMP (assuming an omnidirectional antenna). The 3 dB difference between 225 µV/m and 160 µV/m provides margin for excess path loss over free-space propagation when receiving a long UAT ADS-B message. A 4 dB margin is provided when receiving a basic UAT ADS-B message.

Note 2.- Various aircraft operations may have different air-air range requirements depending on the intended ADS-B function of the UAT equipment. Therefore different installations may operate at different power levels (see 7.12.1.2.3.1).

7.12.3.2   Receiving function

7.12.3.2.1   RECEIVER SENSITIVITY

7.12.3.2.1.1   *LONG UAT ADS-B MESSAGE AS DESIRED SIGNAL*

A desired signal level of -93 dBm applied at the PMP shall produce a rate of successful message reception (SMR) of 90 per cent or better under the following conditions:

a) When the desired signal is of nominal modulation (i.e. FM deviation is 625 kHz) and at the maximum signal frequency offsets, and subject to relative Doppler shift at ±1 200 knots;

b) When the desired signal is of maximum modulation distortion allowed in 7.12.4.3, at the nominal transmission frequency ±1 parts per million (ppm), and subject to relative Doppler shift at ±1 200 knots.

Note. - The receiver c riteria f or s uccessful m essage reception o f U AT A DS-B messages a re provided in Section 4 of Part I of the Manual on the Universal Access Transceiver (UAT) *(Doc 9861).*

7.12.3.2.1.2 *BASIC UAT ADS-B MESSAGE AS DESIRED SIGNAL*

A desired signal level of -94 dBm applied at the PMP shall produce a rate of SMR of 90 per cent or better under the following conditions:

a) When the desired signal is of nominal modulation (i.e. FM deviation is 625 kHz) and at the maximum signal frequency offsets, and subject to relative Doppler shift at ±1 200 knots;

b) When the desired signal is of maximum modulation distortion allowed in 7.12.4.3, at the nominal transmission frequency ±1 ppm, and subject to relative Doppler shift at ±1 200 knots.

Note - The receiver criteria f or s uccessful m essage r eception of U AT ADS-B me ssages a re provided in Section 4 of Part I of the Manual on the Universal Access Transceiver (UAT) *(Doc 9861).*

7.12.3.2.1.3 *UAT GROUND UPLINK MESSAGE AS DESIRED SIGNAL*

A desired signal level of -91 dBm applied at the PMP shall produce a rate of an SMR of 90 per cent or better under the following conditions:

a) When the desired signal is of nominal modulation (i.e. FM deviation is 625 kHz) and at the maximum signal frequency offsets, and subject to relative Doppler shift at ±850 knots;

b) When the desired signal is of maximum modulation distortion allowed in 7.12.4.3, at the nominal transmission frequency ±1 ppm, and subject to relative Doppler shift at ±850 knots.

Notes.-

1. The receiver criteria for successful message reception of UAT ground uplink messages are provided in Section 4 of Part I of the Manual on the Universal Access Transceiver (UAT*) (Doc 9861) (in preparation).*

2. T his r equirement ensures the bi t rate ac curacy s upporting demodulation in t he UAT equipment is adequate to properly receive the longer UAT ground uplink message.

7.12.3.2.2 RECEIVER SELECTIVITY

Notes.—

1. *The undesired signal used is an unmodulated carrier applied at the frequency offset.*

2. *This requirement establishes the receiver's rejection of the off-channel energy.*

3. *It i s a ssumed t hat ratios i n between t he specified offsets will f all near t he i nterpolated value.*

4. *The desired signal u sed is a U AT A DS-B l ong m essage at -90 dB m at the PMP, t o be received with a 90 per cent successful message reception rate.*

5. *The to lerable c o-channel c ontinuous w ave i nterference power l evel f or ai rcraft UAT receivers is assumed to be -101 dBm or less at the PMP.*

6. R efer t o Se ction 2 .4.2 of P art I I of t he Manual on the Universal Access Transceiver (UAT) *(Doc 9861) for a discussion of when a high-performance receiver is desirable.*

a) Standard UAT receivers shall meet the selectivity characteristics given in Table 7.12-3 at the end of this Chapter.

b) High-performance receivers shall meet the more stringent selectivity characteristics given in Table 7.12-4 at the end of Chapter 7.12.

Note - Refer t o Se ction 2 .4.2 o f P art I I of t he Manual on the Universal Access Transceiver (UAT) *(Doc 9861) for guidance material on the implementation of high-performance receivers.*

7.12.3.2.3 RECEIVER DESIRED SIGNAL DYNAMIC RANGE

The receiver shall achieve a successful message reception rate for long ADS-B messages of 99 per cent or better when the desired signal level is between -90 dBm and -10 dBm at the PMP in the absence of any interfering signals.

Note - The v alue of -10 dB m represents 1 20-foot s eparation from a n a ircraft transmitter transmitting at maximum allowed power.

7.12.3.2.4 RECEIVER TOLERANCE TO PULSED INTERFERENCE

Note — All power level requirements in this section are referenced to the PMP.

a) For Standard and High-Performance receivers the following requirements shall apply:

1) The receiver shall be capable of achieving 99 per cent SMR of long UAT ADS-B messages when the desired signal level is between -90 dBm and -10 dBm when subjected to DME interference under the following conditions: DME pulse pairs at a nominal rate of 3 600 pulse pairs per second at either 12 or 30 microseconds pulse spacing at a level of -36 dBm for any 1 MHz DME channel frequency between 980 MHz and 1 213 MHz inclusive.

2) Following a 21 microsecond pulse at a level of ZERO (0) dBm and at a frequency of 1 090 MHz, the receiver shall return to within 3 dB of the specified sensitivity level (see 7.12.3.2.1) within 12 microseconds.

b) For the standard UAT receiver the following additional requirements shall apply:

1) The receiver shall be capable of achieving 90 per cent SMR of long UAT ADS-B messages when the desired signal level is between -87 dBm and -10 dBm when subjected to DME interference under the following conditions: DME pulse pairs at a nominal rate of 3 600 pulse pairs per second at a 12 microseconds pulse spacing at a level of -56 dBm and a frequency of 979 MHz.

2) The receiver shall be capable of achieving 90 per cent SMR of long UAT ADS-B messages when the desired signal level is between -87 dBm and -10 dBm when subjected to DME interference under the following conditions: DME pulse pairs at a nominal rate of 3 600 pulse pairs per second at a 12 microseconds pulse spacing at a level of -70 dBm and a frequency of 978 MHz.

c) For the high-performance receiver the following additional requirements shall apply:

1) The receiver shall be capable of achieving 90 per cent SMR of long UAT ADS-B messages when the desired signal level is between -87 dBm and -10 dBm when subjected to DME interference under the following conditions: DME pulse pairs at a

nominal rate of 3 600 pulse pairs per second at a 12 microseconds pulse spacing at a level of -43 dBm and a frequency of 979 MHz.

2) The receiver shall be capable of achieving 90 per cent SMR of long UAT ADS-B messages when the desired signal level is between -87 dBm and -10 dBm when subjected to DME interference under the following conditions: DME pulse pairs at a nominal rate of 3 600 pulse pairs per second at a 12 microseconds pulse spacing at a level of -79 dBm and a frequency of 978 MHz.

7.12.4   PHYSICAL LAYER CHARACTERISTICS

7.12.4.1   Modulation rate

The modulation rate shall be 1.041 667 Mbps with a tolerance for aircraft transmitters of ±20 ppm and a tolerance for ground transmitters of ±2 ppm.

Note — The tolerance on the modulation rate is consistent with the requirement on modulation distortion (see 7.12.4.3).

7.12.4.2   Modulation type

a) Data shall be modulated onto the carrier using binary continuous phase frequency shift keying. The modulation index, *h*, shall be no less than 0.6;

b) A binary ONE (1) shall be indicated by a shift up in frequency from the nominal carrier frequency and a binary ZERO (0) by a shift down from the nominal carrier frequency.

Notes -

1. Filtering of the transmitted signal (at base band and/or after frequency modulation) will be required to meet the spectral containment requirement of 7.12.1.2.3.3. This filtering may cause the deviation to exceed these values at points other than the optimum sampling points.

2. Because of the filtering of the transmitted signal, the received frequency offset varies continuously between the nominal values of ± 312.5 kHz (and beyond), and the optimal sampling point may not be easily identified. This point can be defined in terms of the so-called "eye diagram" of the received signal. The ideal eye diagram is a superposition of samples of the (undistorted) post detection waveform shifted by multiples of the bit period (0.96 microseconds). The optimum sampling point is the point during the bit period at which the opening of the eye diagram (i.e. the minimum separation between positive and negative frequency offsets at very high signal-to-noise ratios) is maximized. An example "eye diagram" can be seen in Figure 7.12-3 at the end of this Chapter 12.1. The timing of the points where the lines converge defines the "optimum sampling point". Figure 7.12-4 at the end of Chapter 7.12, shows an eye pattern that has been partially closed by modulation distortion.

7.12.4.3   Modulation distortion

a) For aircraft transmitters, the minimum vertical opening of the eye diagram of the transmitted signal (measured at the optimum sampling points) shall be no less than 560 kHz when measured over an entire long UAT ADS-B message containing pseudorandom message data blocks.

b) For ground transmitters, the minimum vertical opening of the eye diagram of the transmitted signal (measured at the optimum sampling points) shall be no less than 560 kHz when measured over an entire UAT ground uplink message containing pseudorandom message data blocks.

c) For aircraft transmitters, the minimum horizontal opening of the eye diagram of the transmitted signal (measured at 978 MHz) shall be no less than 0.624 microseconds (0.65 symbol periods) when measured over an entire long UAT ADS-B message containing pseudorandom message data blocks.

d) For ground transmitters, the minimum horizontal opening of the eye diagram of the transmitted signal (measured at 978 MHz) shall be no less than 0.624 microseconds (0.65 symbol periods) when measured over an entire UAT ground uplink message containing pseudorandom message data blocks.

Notes.-

1. Section 7.12.4.4 defines the UAT ADS-B message types.

2. The ideal eye diagram is a superposition of samples of the (undistorted) post detection waveform shifted by multiples of the bit period (0.96 microseconds).

7.12.4.4   Broadcast message characteristics

The UAT system shall support two different message types: the UAT ADS-B message and the UAT ground uplink message.

7.12.4.4.1   UAT ADS-B MESSAGE

The Active portion (see 7.12.1.2.6) of a UAT ADS-B message shall contain the following elements, in the following order:

— Bit synchronization
— Message data block
— FEC parity.

7.12.4.4.1.1   *BIT SYNCHRONIZATION*

The first element of the Active portion of the UAT ADS-B message shall be a 36-bit synchronization sequence. For the UAT ADS-B messages the sequence shall be:

111010101100110111011010010011100010

with the left-most bit transmitted first.

7.12.4.4.1.2   *THE MESSAGE DATA BLOCK*

The second element of the Active portion of the UAT ADS-B message shall be the message data block. There shall be two lengths of UAT ADS-B message data blocks supported. The basic UAT ADS-B message shall have a 144-bit message data block and the long UAT ADS-B message shall have a 272-bit message data block.

Note - The format, encoding and transmission order of the message data block element is provided in Section 2.1 of Part I of the Manual on the Universal Access Transceiver (UAT) *(Doc 9861).*

7.12.4.4.1.3   *FEC PARITY*

The third and final element of the Active portion of the UAT ADS-B message shall be the FEC parity.

7.12.4.4.1.3.1   *Code type*

The FEC parity generation shall be based on a systematic Reed-Solomon (RS) 256-ary code with 8-bit code word symbols. FEC parity generation shall be per the following code:

a) **Basic UAT ADS-B message**: Parity shall be a RS (30, 18) code.

Note — This results in 12 bytes (code symbols) of parity capable of correcting up to 6 symbol errors per block.

b) **Long UAT ADS-B message**: Parity shall be a RS (48, 34) code.

Note — This results in 14 bytes (code symbols) of parity capable of correcting up to 7 symbol errors per block.

For either message length the primitive polynomial of the code shall be as follows:

$$p(x) = x^8 + x^7 + x^2 + x + 1$$

The generator polynomial shall be as follows:

$$\prod_{i=120}^{P}(x - \alpha^i)$$

where:

P = 131 for RS (30, 18) code,
P = 133 for RS (48, 34) code, and
α is a primitive element of a Galois field of size 256 (i.e. GF(256)).

7.12.4.4.1.3.2 *Transmission order of FEC parity*

FEC parity bytes shall be ordered most significant to least significant in terms of the polynomial coefficients they represent. The ordering of bits within each byte shall be most significant to least significant. FEC parity bytes shall follow the message data block.

7.12.4.4.2 UAT GROUND UPLINK MESSAGE

The Active portion of a UAT ground uplink message shall contain the following elements, in the following order:

— Bit synchronization

— Interleaved message data block and FEC parity.

7.12.4.4.2.1 *BIT SYNCHRONIZATION*

The first element of the Active portion of the UAT ground uplink message shall be a 36-bit synchronization sequence. For the UAT ground uplink message the sequence shall be:

000101010011001000100101101100011101

with the left-most bit transmitted first.

7.12.4.4.2.2 *INTERLEAVED MESSAGE DATA BLOCK AND FEC PARITY*

7.12.4.4.2.2.1 *Message data block (before interleaving and after de-interleaving)*

The UAT ground uplink message shall have 3 456 bits of message data block. These bits are divided into 6 groups of 576 bits. FEC is applied to each group as described in 7.12.4.4.2.2.2.

Note - Further d etails o n t he f ormat, e ncoding a nd transmission order of t he UAT ground uplink message data block are provided in Section 2.2 of Part I of the Manual on the Universal Access Transceiver (UAT) *(Doc 9861).*

7.12.4.4.2.2.2 *FEC parity (before interleaving and after de-interleaving)*

7.12.4.4.2.2.2.1 *Code type*

The FEC parity generation shall be based on a systematic RS 256-ary code with 8-bit code word symbols. FEC parity generation for each of the six blocks shall be a RS (92,72) code.

Notes.-

1. Section 7.12.4.4.2.2.3 provides details on the interleaving procedure.

2. This results in 20 bytes (symbols) of parity capable of correcting up to 10 symbol errors per block. The additional use of interleaving for the UAT ground uplink message allows additional robustness against burst errors.

The primitive polynomial of the code is as follows:

$$p(x) = x^8 + x^7 + x^2 + x + 1$$

The generator polynomial is as follows:

$$\prod_{i=120}^{P}(x - \alpha^i)$$

where:

P = 139, and
α is a primitive element of a Galois field of size 256 (i.e. GF(256)).

7.12.4.4.2.2.2.2 *Transmission order of FEC parity*

FEC parity bytes are ordered most significant to least significant in terms of the polynomial coefficients they represent. The ordering of bits within each byte shall be most significant to least significant. FEC parity bytes shall follow the message data block.

7.12.4.4.2.2.3 *Interleaving procedure*

UAT ground uplink messages shall be interleaved and transmitted by the ground station, as listed below:

a) Interleaving procedure: The interleaved message data block and FEC parity consists of 6 interleaved Reed-Solomon blocks. The interleaver is represented by a 6×92 matrix, where each entry is a RS 8-bit symbol. Each row comprises a single RS (92,72) block as shown in Table 7.12-5 at the end of this Chapter. In this table, block numbers prior to interleaving are represented as "A" through "F". The information is ordered for transmission column by column, starting at the upper left corner of the matrix.

b) Transmission order: The bytes are then transmitted in the following order:

1,73,145,217,289,361,2,74,146,218,290,362,3,. . .,C/20,D/20,E/20,F/20.

Notes - The following guidance materials contain information and references bearing on some of the Standards contained in CAR-ANS Part 7.12:

1.	The Manual on the Universal Access Transceiver (UAT) *(Doc 9861), Part I, provides detailed technical specifications on UAT, including ADS-B message data blocks and formats, procedures for operation of UAT transmitting subsystems, and avionics interface requirements with other aircraft systems.*

2.	The Manual on the Universal Access Transceiver (UAT) *(Doc 9861), Part II, provides information on UAT system operation, description of a range of example avionics equipment classes and their applications, guidance on UAT aircraft and ground station installation aspects, and detailed information on UAT system performance simulation.*

TABLES FOR CAR-ANS 7.12

Table 7.12-1 Transmitter power levels

Transmitter type	Minimum power at PMP	Maximum power at PMP	Intended minimum air-to-air ranges
Aircraft (Low)	7 watts (+38.5 dBm)	18 watts (+42.5 dBm)	20 NM
Aircraft (Medium)	16 watts (+42 dBm)	40 watts (+46 dBm)	40 NM
Aircraft (High)	100 watts (+50 dBm)	250 watts (+54 dBm)	120 NM
Ground Station	Specified by the service provider to meet local requirements within the constraint of 12.1.2.3.2.		

Notes.—

1. The three levels listed for the avionics are available to support applications with varying range requirements. See the discussion of UAT aircraft Equipage Classes in Section 2.4.2 of Part II of the Manual on the Universal Access Transceiver (UAT) *(Doc 9861) (in preparation).*

2. The intended minimum air-to-air ranges are for high-density air traffic environments. Larger air-toair ranges will be achieved in low-density air traffic environments.

Table 7.12-2 UAT transmit spectrum

Frequency offset from center	Required attenuation from maximum power level (dB as measured at the PMP)
All frequencies in the range 0 – 0.5 MHz	0
All frequencies in the range 0.5 – 1.0 MHz	Based on linear* interpolation between these points
1.0 MHz	18
All frequencies in the range 1.0 – 2.25 MHz	Based on linear* interpolation between these points
2.25 MHz	50
All frequencies in the range 2.25 – 3.25 MHz	Based on linear* interpolation between these points
3.25 MHz	60

* based on attenuation in dB and a linear frequency scale

Table 7.12-3 Standard UAT receiver rejection ratios

Frequency offset from center	Minimum rejection ratio (Undesired/desired level in dB)
–1.0 MHz	10
+1.0 MHz	15
(±) 2.0 MHz	50
(±) 10.0 MHz	60

Note.— It is assumed that ratios in between the specified offsets will fall near the interpolated value.

**Table 7.12-4 High-performance receiver rejection ratios**

Frequency offset from center	Minimum rejection ratio (Undesired/desired level in dB)
–1.0 MHz	30
+1.0 MHz	40
(±) 2.0 MHz	50
(±) 10.0 MHz	60

Table 7.12-5.   Ground uplink interleaver matrix

RS Block	MDB Byte #						FEC Parity (Block/Byte #)			
A	1	2	3	...	71	72	A/1	...	A/19	A/20
B	73	74	75	...	143	144	B/1	...	B/19	B/20
C	145	146	147	...	215	216	C/1	...	C/19	C/20
D	217	218	219	...	287	288	D/1	...	D/19	D/20
E	289	290	291	...	359	360	E/1	...	E/19	E/20
F	361	362	363	...	431	432	F/1	...	F/19	F/20

Note.— In Table 7.12-5, message data block Byte #1 through #72 are the 72 bytes (8 bits each) of message data block information carried in the first RS (92,72) block. FEC parity A/1 through A/20 are the 20 bytes of FEC parity associated with that block (A).

FIGURE FOR CAR-ANS 7.12
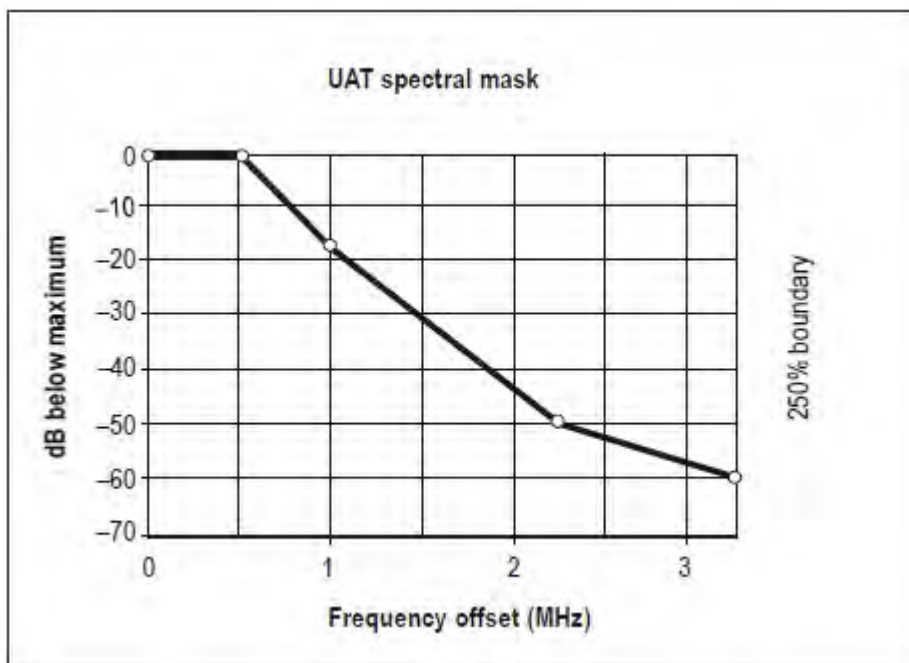
Notes.—

1. *99 per cent of the power of the UAT spectrum is contained in 1.3 MHz (±0.65 MHz). This is roughly equivalent to the 20 dB bandwidth.*

2. *Spurious emissions requirements begin at ±250 per cent of the 1.3 MHz value, therefore the transmit mask requirement extends to ±3.25 MHz.*
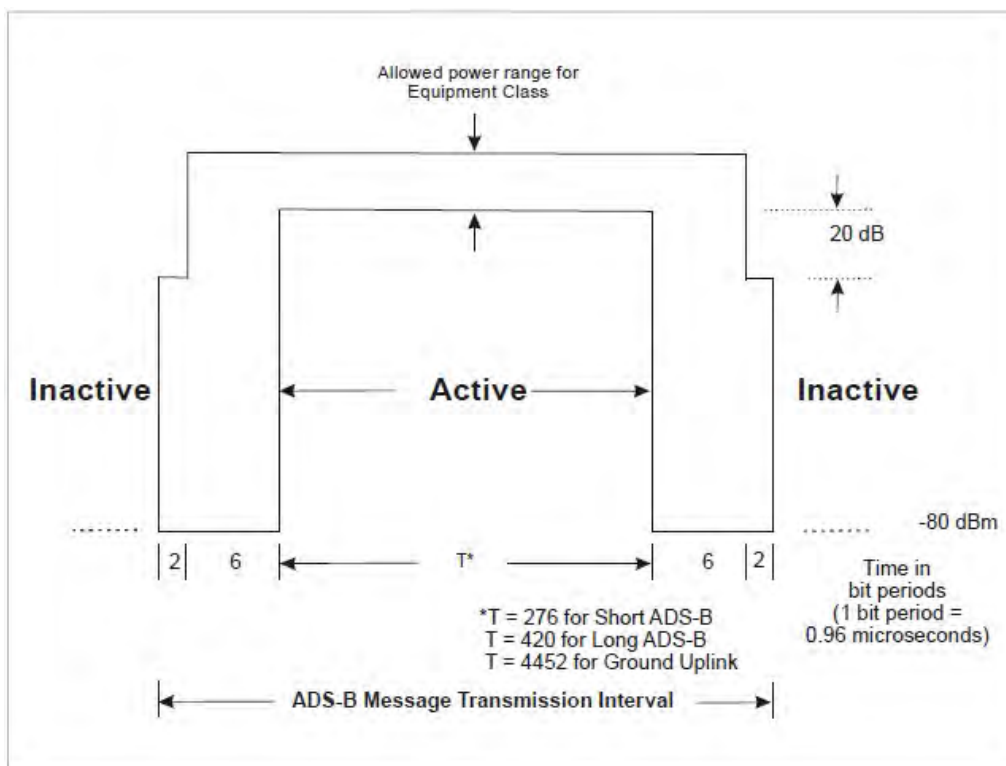
Figure 12-1.   UAT transmit spectrum

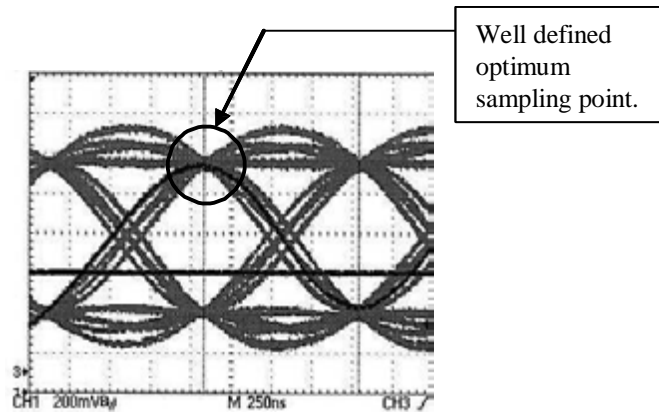**Figure 7.12-2. Time/amplitude profile of UAT message transmission**
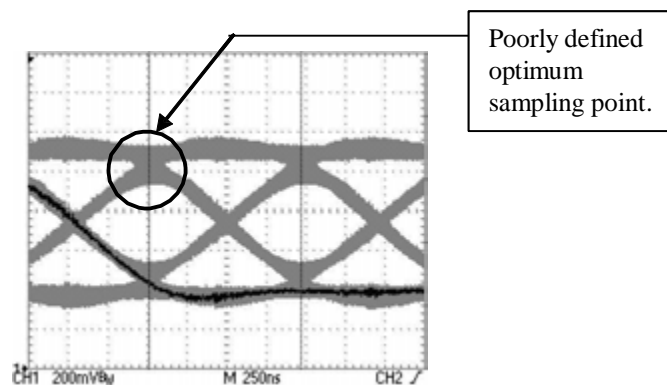
Figure 7.12-3.   Ideal eye diagram

Figure 12-4.   Distorted eye diagram

ATTACHMENT TO CAR-ANS Part 7. GUIDANCE MATERIAL FOR THE VHF DIGITAL LINK (VDL)

1. GUIDANCE MATERIAL FOR THE VHF DIGITAL LINK (VDL)

Note.— The St andards a nd Reco mmended Pr actices (SARPs) r eferred t o a re co ntained i n CARANS 7.6.

2. SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

2.1 The VDL system provides an air-ground data communications link within the aeronautical telecommunications network (ATN). The VDL will operate in parallel with the other ATN air-ground subnetworks.

2.2 VDL ground stations consist of a VHF radio and a computer capable of handling the VDL protocol throughout the coverage area. The VDL stations offer connectivity via a ground-based telecommunications network (e.g. X.25 based) to ATN intermediate systems which will provideaccess to ground-based ATN end systems.

2.3 In order to communicate with the VDL ground stations, aircraft are required to be equipped with VDL avionics which will include a VHF radio and a computer capable of handling the VDL protocol. The air-ground communication will utilize 25 kHz channels in the VHF aeronautical mobile (route) service band.

3. VDL PRINCIPLES

3.1 Communications transfer principles

3.1.1 Connectivity between applications running inATN end systems (ES) using the ATN and its subnetworks, including the VDL, for air-ground communication is provided by the transport layer entities in these end systems. Transport connections between airborne and ground end systems shall be maintained through controlled changes of the precise ATN intermediate systems (IS) and VDL network elements that provide this connectivity.

3.1.2 Transport connections between ATN ES are not linked to a particular subnetwork and ISO 8473 network protocol data units transmitted by an ES can pass via any air-ground ATN compatible subnetwork (such as aeronautical mobile satellite service (AMSS) data link, SSR Mode S data link or VDL) that meets the quality of service (QOS) requirements. A transport connection between an aircraft ES and a ground ES shall be maintained as long as there is at least one air-ground subnetwork connection between the aircraft IS and a ground IS which has connectivity to the ground ES. In order to maximize subnetwork connectivity, aircraft are expected to maintain air-ground subnetwork connections via any subnetwork

(AMSS, Mode S or VDL) with which link layer connectivity can be established.

3.1.3 The VDL subnetwork provides connectivity in the form of switched virtual circuits between ISO 8208 data terminal equipment (DTE) entities of aircraft and ground-based ATN intermediate systems. Due to the fact that VHF signals have only line-of-sight propagation, it is necessary for aircraft in flight to regularly establish link connections with new VDL ground stations in order to maintain VHF coverage. An established VDL virtual circuit between an aircraft DTE and a ground DTE is maintained through a controlled change to a ground station through which the ground DTE can be accessed.

3.1.4 VDL virtual circuits may be cleared when the aircraft or ground IS identifies a policy situation where the virtual circuit to the ground DTE is no longer necessary but this shall only happen if another VDL virtual circuit remains established. A policy situation is a situation where considerations other than coverage influence the decision to establish a connection.

This could be, for example, a situation where an aircraft is within the designated operational coverage area of ground stations operated by different operators and a decision must be made with which operator to establish a connection. The case where an aircraft crosses a border between two States needs special attention. An aircraft has to establish a virtual circuit to the DTE in the IS of the State entered before clearing the virtual circuit with the DTE in the IS of the State left.

3.1.5 The scenarios for subnetwork connection maintenance are shown in Figure ATT 7-1. If the ground stations on each side of a State border do not offer ISO 8208 connectivity to the DTEs of the IS in both States, aircraft crossing the border will have to set up a link connection to a ground station in the State entered before being able to establish a virtual circuit to the IS of that State. Only after establishment of the new link connection and virtual circuit, the aircraft will clear the virtual circuit with the DTE of the IS of the country left over the link which gave access to that IS. If the VDL aeronautical stations on both sides of the State border offer connectivity to the IS in both States, the changeover of the virtual circuits has to take place over the same link connection.

3.2 VDL quality of service for ATN routing

3.2.1 The use of the VDL system for air-ground communications will depend on the routing decisions of aircraft and ground-based ATN IS. These ISs will decide on the path to be used for air-ground communications based on quality of service values requested by transmitting ESs.

3.2.2 The IS at each end of the air-ground connections must interpret the requested QOS value and decide which of the available connections can best be met. It is important that the level of QOS which a VDL connection is perceived as providing is set at a level which corresponds to its true performance.

3.2.3 In cases where the VDL is the only data link with which an aircraft has been equipped, all communications must be routed via a VDL connection and the value set for QOS to be provided by the connection must not block the communication.

3.2.4 In other cases where aircraft are equipped with other air-ground data links (such as AMSS and SSR Mode S) there may be simultaneous parallel connections over multiple subnetworks. In these cases, the values for QOS provided by each subnetwork must be set so as to ensure that the VDL connection will be used where appropriate.

3.2.5 It is necessary that coordination take place between aircraft operators, ground station operators and ground system operators to ensure that the right balance is achieved between different subnetworks.

4. VDL GROUND STATION NETWORK CONCEPT

4.1 Access

4.1.1 A VDL ground station will provide access for aircraft to the ground ATN IS using the VDL protocol over a VHF channel.

4.2 Institutional issues concerning VDL ground station network operators

4.2.1 An ATS provider wishing to use VDL for air traffic service (ATS) communications needs to ensure that the VDL service is available. The ATS provider can either operate the VDL ground station network itself or arrange for the operation of the VDL stations (or VDL network) by a telecommunications service provider. It seems likely that individual States will make different arrangements for the provision of VDL service to aircraft. Operation and implementation of VDL need to be coordinated at a regional level in order to ensure acceptable service on international routes.

4.2.2 The use of a VDL ground station network by entities external to the ATS provider will be subject to service agreements between the ATS provider and the telecommunications service provider. These agreements set out the obligations of the two parties and need, in particular, to be specific on the quality of service provided as well as the characteristics of the user interface.

4.2.3 It seems likely that some VDL ground station network operators will levy user charges. These are expected to be levied either on the aircraft operators and/or on the ATS providers. It is necessary to ensure that the use of VDL is feasible for those aircraft operators intended to use VDL for ATS/AOC communications.

4.3 VDL ground station equipment

4.3.1 A VDL ground station will consist of a VHF radio and a computer which may be separate or integrated with the radio. The VDL functionality of the VHF radio equipment will be similar to that installed in aircraft.

4.3.2 The provision of network status monitoring is an important element in the maintenance of the highest availability possible.

4.4 Ground station siting

4.4.1 The line of sight limitations of VHF propagation is an important factor in the siting of ground stations. It is necessary to ensure that the ground stations are installed in a manner which provides coverage throughout the designated operational coverage area (DOC).

4.4.2 The coverage requirements for VDL depend on the applications that are intended to operate over the VDL. These applications may function, for example, when an aircraft is a ten-route altitude, in a terminal area or on the ground at an airport.

4.4.3 En-route coverage can be provided using a small number of ground stations with a large DOC (for example, the range of a VHF signal from a station at sea level and an aircraft at 37 000 ft is approximately 200 NM). Hence, it is in fact desirable that the smallest number of ground stations possible be used to provide en-route coverage in order to minimize the possibility of simultaneous uplink transmissions from ground stations which may cause message collisions on the VHF channel. The factors limiting en-route coverage will be availability of landmass and the availability of a communications link from a ground station to other ground systems.

4.4.4 Terminal area coverage requires, in general, the installation of ground stations at all airports where VDL operation is required in order to ensure coverage throughout the terminal area.

4.4.5 Aerodrome surface communication coverage must be provided by a ground station at the airport but, due to the physical structure of the airport, it may not be possible to guarantee coverage in all areas with a single station.

4.5 Ground station frequency engineering

4.5.1 The choice of the VHF channel on which a ground station will operate depends on the coverage that the ground station will be required to provide. Coverage on a particular channel is provided by a collection of ground stations operating on that channel and the communications on that channel will occupy the channel for all the ground stations in a coverage area.

4.5.2 As with VHF voice communications, VDL communications cannot be limited to propagating only within States, and frequency coordination between States will be required in the allocation of VDL frequencies. The nature of the protocol does, however, allow for frequency re-use by several ground stations within the same coverage area and hence the rules for the assignment of frequencies are not the same as for voice communications.

4.5.3 The carrier sense multiple access (CSMA) media access control protocol (MAC) layer used in VDL cannot exclude message collisions if some stations using a frequency channel cannot receive the transmissions of other stations, a situation known as a hidden transmitter situation. Hidden transmitters lead to simultaneous transmissions which can cause the intended receiver of one or both transmissions to be unable to decode the received signal.

4.5.4 A frequency will be assigned to providing en-route coverage and all the en-route stations will be set to operate on this frequency. In order to minimize the probability of simultaneous transmissions on the channel by hidden transmitters in a CSMA environment, this channel may not be used for terminal area or aerodrome surface communications except in areas of very low channel loading.

4.5.5 The VDL SARPs call for the provision of a common signalling channel (CSC) on which access to VDL service will be guaranteed in all areas where VDL Mode 2 service is available. This is especially important at airports and on the edge of VDL en-route coverage zones where aircraft are likely to establish initial VDL connectivity. Since the characteristics

of Mode 1 and Mode 2 radio frequency transmissions are not compatible, the CSC cannot be used for Mode 1 communications. There is no requirement for a CSC for VDL Mode 1.

4.6 Ground station connection to intermediate systems

4.6.1 In order to provide access to the ground systems which are connected to the aeronautical telecommunications network, a VDL ground station needs to be connected to one or more ATN IS. The purpose of a VDL ground station is to interconnect aircraft with the ground-based ATN via which communications with terrestrial ATN ES can take place.

4.6.2 The ground-based ATN IS can be co-hosted in the VDL ground station computer in which case the VDL subnetwork virtual circuit will end in that computer. This architecture will have an impact on the exchanges required when an aircraft establishes a VDL link with a new ground station. The exact exchange will depend on whether the ground stations contain separate IS or elements of the same distributed intermediate system.

4.6.3 If the IS is not contained in the VDL ground station, it will be connected to the ground station by one of the following means:

a) wide area network (WAN);
b) local area network (LAN); and
c) dedicated communications line.

4.6.4 In all cases, in order to be in accordance with the Manual of the Aeronautical Telecommunication Network (ATN) (Doc 9578) for providing an open systems interconnection (OSI) compatible connection-oriented subnetwork service between the aircraft IS and the ground-based IS, the VDL ground station computer will be required to extend the VDL virtual circuit across the terrestrial network or link.

4.6.5 In order to provide simultaneous virtual circuits to several terrestrial ISs, the VDL ground station computer needs to contain a VDL subnetwork entity capable of converting addresses in VDL subnetwork call requests into addresses in the ground-based network.

5. VDL AIRBORNE OPERATING CONCEPT

5.1 Avionics

5.1.1 VDL avionics. In order to operate in a VDL network, aircraft need to be equipped with an avionics system providing the VDL subnetwork user (ISO 8208 DTE) function. The system providing this function will also provide the subnetwork user functions for the other air-ground ATN-compatible subnetworks and the aircraft ATN intermediate system function and, hence, its development is necessary in order to provide ATN communications to multiple end-systems or over multiple air-ground subnetworks.

5.2 VDL avionics certification

5.2.1 The VHF digital radio may also provide for double-side band amplitude modulation (DSB-AM) voice capability for emergency back-up to VHF radios used for voice communications. It would be necessary in this case to demonstrate that the VDL functionality of the VDR does not interfere with the DSB-AM voice functionality.
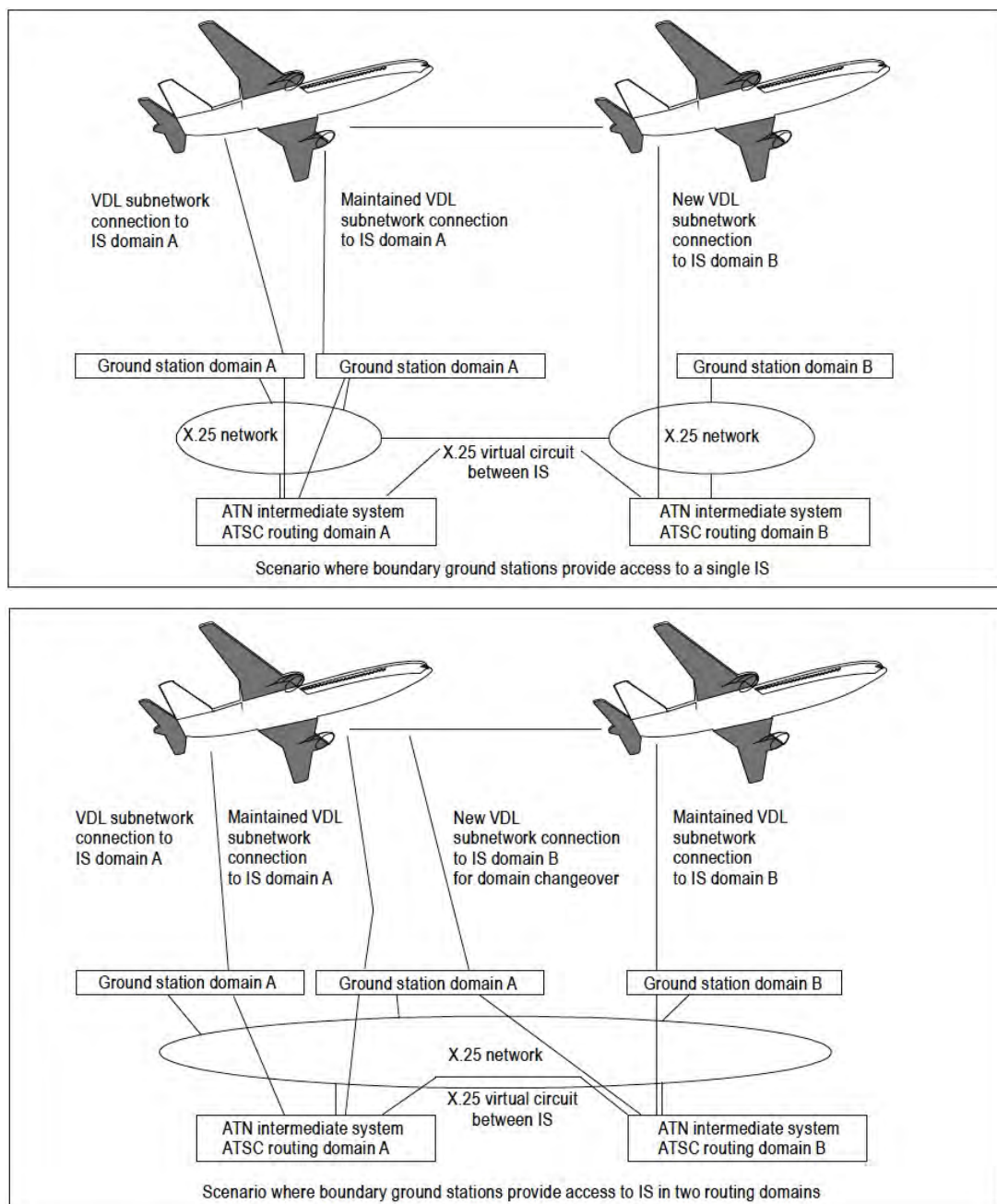
5.2.2 The VDL function in the VHF digital radio provides an air-ground data link service to the VDL subnetwork user entity of the aircraft ATN intermediate system. If the provision of a VHF subnetwork service to an ATN intermediate system were considered an essential service for a particular installation, the VDL functionality of the VDR would need to be certified as an essential function. The use of VDL for ATS communications is not, however, intended to require two aircraft radios to operate simultaneously in VDL mode.

5.3 Registration of aircraft with VDL network operators

5.3.1 For normal communications service, it is to be expected that aircraft operators will be required to register their aircraft with the network operators. In emergency or back-up situations, it must be possible for any VDL-equipped aircraft to establish connectivity over any VDL ground station network.

5.3.2 Registration of aircraft VDL stations with VDL network operators is desirable for network management since, for example, a network operator may identify a temporary fault in the VDL communications from an aircraft and would wish to contact the operator of the aircraft in order to have the fault resolved. Registration of aircraft is also useful in planning the required ground station network capacity. Registration with a VDL ground station network operator does not necessarily imply that the aircraft operator will be charged for use of the VDL ground station network.

FIGURE ATT 7-1.

Scenario where boundary ground stations provide access to a single IS

Scenario where boundary ground stations provide access to IS in two routing domains

EFFECTIVITY CLAUSE:

This amendment shall be added to the Philippine CAR-ANS Part 7, series of 2015 and shall take effect immediately and shall supersede any other memoranda, regulations, and directives in conflict with this provision after publication thereof in the Official Gazette or in a newspaper of general circulation and a copy filed with the University of the Philippines Law Center - Office of the National Administrative Register (UP-ONAR).

So ordered. Signed this ___1 4___ day of JUL_____ 2015, CAAP, Pasay City.

LT GEN WILLIAM K HOTCHKISS III AFP (Ret)